

MEGA

GOAL

3

TEACHER'S GUIDE

MANUEL DOS SANTOS
JILL KOREY O'SULLIVAN
ELI GHAZEL - DANAE KOZANOGLOU



MegaGoal 3 Teacher's Guide

Published by McGraw-Hill Education, 2 Penn Plaza, New York, NY 10121. Copyright © 2017 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw-Hill Education, including, but not limited to, in any network or other electronic storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

ISBN: 978-1-5268-1931-4

Publisher: Jorge Rodríguez Hernández

Editorial director: Anita Raducanu

Development editors: Kasia McNabb, Ana Laura Martínez Vázquez, Janet Battiste

Teacher's Guide Writing: Ellen Kisslinger

Art direction: Heloisa Yara Tiburtius

Interior design and production: Page2, LLC

Cover design: Page2, LLC

Photo coordinator: Kevin Sharpe

Photo Credits: The Photo Credits section for this book on page 107 is considered an extension of the copyright page.

Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education. This Regional Edition is not available outside Europe, the Middle East and Africa.



Contents

	Scope and Sequence	iv
	Introduction	vi
Unit	Intro	2
Unit	1 Connected by Technology	6
Unit	2 Crime Doesn't Pay	20
Unit	3 Far and Away	34
	EXPANSION Units 1–3	48
Unit	4 TV Around the World	54
Unit	5 Working 9 to 5	68
Unit	6 Going Green	82
	EXPANSION Units 4–6	96
	Vocabulary	102
	Irregular Verbs	106
	Audio Track List	108
	Key to Phonetic Symbols	109
	Photocopiable Activities Answer Key	110
	Workbook Answer Key	116
	Photocopiable Activities	128

Scope and Sequence

	Unit Title	Functions	Grammar
	Intro Pages 2–5	Express opinion, feeling and preference Agree and disagree Ask for and give information and instructions Warning and advice	<i>Had better</i> Recycling/using familiar verb forms, prepositions, modifiers, inversion, conditioners
1	Connected by Technology Pages 6–19	Ask for clarification and confirm Discuss using technology for communication Talk about personality characteristics	Auxiliary verbs: <i>do, have, be</i> The comparative and superlative Needs to be done; have/get something done Past participles as adjectives
2	Crime Doesn't Pay Pages 20–33	Discuss crime and punishment Read and discuss newspaper articles Explain steps in a process	The passive Past perfect and past perfect progressive Simple past tense: <i>be</i> , regular and irregular verbs <i>Used to</i> and <i>would</i> Past progressive tense
3	Far and Away Pages 34–47	Talk about travel experiences and travel dreams Discuss hotels and services Make and decline special requests	Adverbs of degree Sentence adverbs Future with <i>be going to</i> and <i>will</i> Information questions Present progressive
EXPANSION Units 1–3 Pages 48–53		Language Review Reading: Computer Viruses: A Headache for Humans Language Plus: Words ending with <i>load</i>	
4	TV Around the World Pages 54–67	Discuss types of TV programs Express and explain preferences Express certainty Talking about festivals	Direct and indirect objects <i>To</i> and <i>for</i> before indirect objects Articles Adjective clauses and relative pronouns Relative pronouns as subjects and objects
5	Working 9 to 5 Pages 68–81	Talk about jobs Ask for favors, make requests and ask for information Express obligation, necessity and lack of necessity	Subjunctive <i>I'd like you + infinitive / I want you + infinitive</i> Tag questions
6	Going Green Pages 82–95	Evaluate how "green" you are Discuss ways to be environmentally responsible Make suggestions Express preferences with <i>I'd rather</i>	Gerunds after verbs Infinitives after verbs Simple present tense versus present progressive Conditional sentences with present and future forms
EXPANSION Units 4–6 Pages 96–101		Language Review Reading: The Psychology of Color Language Plus: Idioms with colors	

Listening	Pronunciation	Reading	Writing
Listening for fact, speaker attitude, relationship	Recycling and using familiar stress and intonation patterns		
Listen for specific details about a cell phone bill	Syllable stress on numbers	Amazing Internet Connections	Write an essay comparing ways of socializing and state your preference Write about and evaluate things you can do on the Internet (Project)
Listen for specific details in a lecture on safety	Linking adjacent consonant sounds	Crime Puzzles	Write a story for a newspaper or web article Research and write about Famous Crimes, Frauds, or Blunders (Project)
Listen for specific details about packing for a trip	Stress on compound nouns	Ecotourism: See the World While Saving It	Write a letter to your friend telling them about a place Research and make a poster promoting ecotourism in your country (Project)

Tools for Writing: Capitalization

Writing: Write about a problem or difficult situation you have experienced

Listen for specific information about a game show	Reduction of <i>going to</i> and <i>want to</i>	A Brief Overview of the History of Television	Write a book review Write, direct, and film your own TV episode (Project)
Listen for specific information about a survey on job satisfaction	Syllable stress on words ending with <i>-tion</i> , <i>-cian</i> , and <i>-sion</i>	You Do <i>What</i> For a Living?	Write about an unusual job that you might like to have Research and write a presentation on Great Jobs and Careers (Project)
Listen for specific information about glass recycling	Thought groups	Living Off The Grid	Write a letter to a newspaper Design and make posters promoting "Going Green" in your school

Tools for Writing: Common errors with prepositions

Writing: Write about cultural meanings of color, symbols, customs, or gestures

Introduction

Philosophy of the Program

MegaGoal is a dynamic American English series for international communication that takes students from absolute beginning to high-intermediate level. It is specifically designed for teenagers and young adults. With eye-catching art and high-interest topics, **MegaGoal** is easy and enjoyable to teach and to learn from.

The goal of **MegaGoal** is to make the learning of English fun, motivating, and success-oriented by way of a carefully graded progression that builds students confidence, and helps them reach the point at which they can use English to express themselves meaningfully about things that matter to them.

The methodology of **MegaGoal** integrates the four skills of speaking, listening, reading, and writing. The earlier levels focus on speaking and listening, but reading and writing are increasingly prioritized as students progress through the series. **MegaGoal** also puts an emphasis on grammar, particularly using grammar in communicative activities.

MegaGoal is designed to appeal to a visually-oriented generation. The visuals aid in presenting and reinforcing language at the same time that they engage student attention. The vocabulary and structures are introduced gradually and recycled systematically. And the tone of the book is humorous—to make the learning process more enjoyable.

Organization of Materials

Each level in **MegaGoal** has the following components:

- Student Book
- Audio Program
- Workbook
- Teacher's Guide (interleaved)
- Test Bank
- Online Learning Center
- IWB Software & Student e-book

MegaGoal has enough material of classroom instruction for a whole semester. The program is flexible, and it can be used with groups that have one, two, or three hours of instruction a day. It can also be used with groups that have only two or three hours a week.

The Components

Student Book

The overall organization of the Student Books in the series is:

	Number of Units	Pages per Unit
Books 1-6	6 Units 2 Expansions	14 pages each 6 pages each

- Units have a consistent lesson format.
- The Expansion units review and expand on language points with high-interest content in activities, readings, and chants..
- A unit-by-unit vocabulary list is included at the back of each Student Book.

Teacher's Guide

This interleaved user-friendly Teacher's Guide is available for each level. The Teacher's Guide offers an overview of the course, some general teaching guidelines, and detailed unit-by-unit teaching notes.

These unit-by-unit teaching notes include:

- Unit Goals
- Unit Warm Up activity
- Instructions for presenting each Student Book activity
- Answers to all the Student Book activities
- Audioscript for the Student Book listening activities
- Language Builder notes
- Teaching Tips
- Additional Activities
- Additional Projects
- Fun Facts

The Teacher's Guide for each book also contains the following:

- Scope and Sequence chart
- Vocabulary lists per unit
- Photocopiable Activities
- Answers to the Workbook activities
- Key to Phonetic Symbols
- Audio Program Track List

Workbook

The Workbook provides exercises that reinforce the material presented in the Student Book.

	Number of Units	Pages per Unit
Books 1-6	6 Units 2 Expansions	10 pages each 6 pages each

Activities in the Workbook focus on reinforcement of vocabulary and grammar. Some units also include a reading. In every unit there is a free writing activity based around a photograph. Students should be encouraged to brainstorm as many words and phrases as they can in connection with the photograph. Encourage students to write full sentences when appropriate. Answers will vary according to the students own ideas, opinions and experiences. Each unit ends with a writing activity, often in the form of personal writing. The Expansion units cover vocabulary, grammar, and writing.

The Workbook Answer Key is found at the back of this Teacher's Guide.

Audio Program

The audio program for each level includes the following material:

- Listen and Discuss (Listen and Repeat in the Intro level) (opening presentation)
- Pair Work model conversations
- Listening
- Pronunciation
- Conversation
- Reading
- Writing
- Chant-Along

The audioscript for the Listening activities appear at point-of-use in the Teacher's Guide.

Testing Program

The Test Bank provides a databank of testing items from which teachers can create customized tests within minutes. Test items reinforce vocabulary, grammar, listening, conversation, reading, writing, and speaking. Teachers can choose to use the items as they are, or teachers can edit, add, delete, and rearrange items.

IWB Software & Student e-book

MegaGoal has two brand new and innovative digital components: the Interactive Whiteboard Software for classroom use and the Online e-books for self-study. Through a variety of interactive applications the content of the books comes to life on the board in class or on the computer screen at home in a way that enhances the learning and teaching process.

Online Learning Center

The Online Learning Center incorporates and extends the learning goals of the Student Book with interactive practice on the computer. A flexible set of activities correlated to each unit builds students' skills.

Student Book Units

Each unit follows a regular pattern:

- **Language**—vocabulary, structures, and functions—are presented and used in context.
- **Grammar** points are presented in chart form and practiced.
- Additional functional language is presented in the context of **Conversations** and role plays.
- A **Reading** expands the unit theme.
- A **Writing** activity calls on students to use the language they've learned.
- **Form, Meaning and Function** activities expand students' knowledge of structures and functional language.
- A **Project** allows students to perform a task and produce a product that calls on them to apply the language and vocabulary they've learned.

Here is a detailed list of the sections in the Student Book. In some units, the order of some elements may vary. In the Intro level, some sections vary as appropriate to students' language abilities.

Presentation

The opening two pages of every unit contain the presentation called Listen and Discuss. This section introduces the unit theme, the communicative context, the grammar points, and the key vocabulary. Students discover meaning from context—by the use of visuals and with help from the teacher.

Quick Check

This section, which appears on the opening two pages, includes a Vocabulary and a Comprehension activity that check how well students understood the content of the presentation. The questions are usually in simple formats: matching, yes/no, short answers. Students can do the activities independently, in pairs, or even in small groups. Answers can be checked as a class, in pairs, or in small groups.

Introduction

Pair Work

This section, also on the opening two pages, gets students involved in personalized communication right away. It allows students to actively use the language and grammar from the presentation in speaking activities. Students typically ask and answer about the content of the presentation pages, or they give personal information relating to the content.

Grammar

The Grammar section consolidates the grammar points and the communicative functions they convey. Students receive explicit instruction on key grammar points in chart format and with example sentences. The charts are then followed by activities and exercises that reinforce the points presented. The Grammar charts can also serve as a convenient built-in reference section for students as they use English throughout the program.

Listening

In this section, students listen to perform tasks. The listening activity can take a variety of formats. The content of the listening often simulates an authentic context: radio ads and programs, messages on telephone answering machines, interviews, personal conversations, and so on.

Pronunciation

Students' attention is focused on specific sounds of English in the Pronunciation section. Typically students listen and repeat sounds, first in the context of words and then in sentences.

Conversation

The Conversation section contextualizes the language as it is used in everyday situations. It is accompanied by the Real Talk feature that develops vocabulary and everyday expressions. The Conversation also includes functional language; for example, the language for agreeing and disagreeing, changing topics, expressing thanks, expressing surprise, making suggestions, or complimenting. One of the unique features of **MegaGoal** is the multiple-ending Conversations, which appear regularly in the Student Book. Students choose the most appropriate ending for a Conversation or make up their own ending.

Your Turn

Your Turn is a role-play activity in which students are encouraged to act out dialogues related to the Conversation. They use personal information or take on made-up roles. Sometimes the Your Turn activity is in

the format of a class survey. This activity allows students to use the language of the unit in simulated everyday conversations.

About You

The purpose of the questions in the About You section is to help students improve their oral fluency. Students talk about themselves, putting into practice what they have learned. Students' attention is engaged as they communicate basic personal information in English.

Reading

The Readings throughout the book expand on the unit topic, and relate to students' age and interests. They take a variety of formats: newspaper and magazine articles, puzzles, humorous stories, etc. Sometimes new vocabulary is introduced. The Teacher's Guide presents reading strategies and skills for students to apply to the reading; for example, using prior knowledge, discovering meaning from context, scanning, making inferences, and drawing conclusions.

Writing

The Writing sections in the series cover writing sentences, paragraphs, letters, and brief reports. Writing is also integrated into many of the Projects. The writing assignments in the Student Book sometimes use the readings as models, asking students to write about themselves or topics that relate to them personally. Writing is also developed through assignments in the Workbook.

Form, Meaning and Function

The Form, Meaning and Function section recalls and recycles students' knowledge of structure (form) and extends their ability to use their linguistic knowledge in a meaningful and communicative way (function). The Teacher's Guide presents concrete ideas and tips for the presentation of form and gives suggestions on approach; so students are confident they are getting the language right and they are able to see the communicative (functional) purpose behind activities.

Project

Each unit includes a task-based activity in which students typically cooperate to perform the task. They may make a tourist brochure, design their dream house, interview people and report back, and so on. The Project relates to the unit theme and requires students to use all the language they have acquired. In addition, the Project offers further writing practice.

Student Book Expansion Units

The Expansion units review and expand the material covered in the previous set of units. Each Expansion includes:

- **Language Review:** two pages of activities that recycle the vocabulary and grammar of the previous set of units
- **Reading:** a thematic reading that challenges students
- **Writing**
- **Project**
- **Chant-Along:** a chant that enables students to expand their language in a pleasant way (*In Levels 1–2 only.*) The chant expands on a theme or the language covered in the units before it. The chant, and its related activities, foster additional conversation and discussion as well as acquisition of new vocabulary and expressions.

Teacher's Guide Units

The Teacher's Guide is interleaved with the Student Book for ease of use. There is one Teacher's Guide page facing each Student Book page.

The following is an overview of the contents for a unit in the Teacher's Guide.

- **Unit Goals**
The Unit Goals are clearly listed at the beginning of every unit in the Teacher's Guide. These include goals for Vocabulary, Functions, Grammar, Listening, Pronunciation, Reading, Writing, Form, Meaning and Function and Project.
- **Warm Up**
Each unit begins with a Warm Up that introduces students to the topic and/or reviews language studied in previous units.
- **Teaching Notes**
Step-by-step teaching notes are provided for all presentations and activities.
- **Language Builder**
This feature consists of explanations of any potentially confusing aspects of grammar or vocabulary.
- **Teaching Tips**
This feature offers practical tips, insights, and recommendations based on the observations of experienced teaching professionals.
- **Additional Activities**
These optional activities may serve as a useful way to extend a topic that students have enjoyed. They may also be useful in mixed-ability classes as activities to

give to students who finish a certain task early.

- **Project**
An additional Project is included at the end of each unit.
- **Fun Facts**
The Fun Facts offer interesting trivia or general knowledge information related to the unit content. Use these when appropriate. You may want to have students find out more about a given topic.
- **Answers**
The answers to all Student Book activities are provided.
- **Workbook Reference**
Cross references to Workbook activities help in lesson planning.
- **Audioscript**
The Audioscript is provided for each unit's Listening activity. (The audio for all other sections is reproduced directly from the Student Book page and, therefore, not repeated in the Audioscript.)

Guidelines for Presenting Materials

Presentation

The first two pages of each unit contain the presentation called Listen and Discuss. In this presentation, students are introduced to new vocabulary, language, and structures in context. The Teacher's Guide contains explicit instructions for presenting each individual unit. In general, you may want to use the following technique. Before students open their books, present the topic of the unit in a warm up, such as by bringing in pictures, using the classroom environment, or using your personal experiences. Then it is recommended that students look at the opening pages. Activate students' prior knowledge by discussing the opening question(s). Then talk about any vocabulary they know (provide support as needed), and have them guess what the unit is about. Then students are ready to listen to the audio. You can have them follow along with the text first as they listen. For any vocabulary word lists on presentation pages, they can listen and repeat. It is recommended that you play the audio several times. You might then read sentences, say vocabulary, or describe part of the picture, and have them point to the relevant part of the pictures or text. At this point, have students do the Quick Check section to practice vocabulary and to check that they have understood the presentation.

Vocabulary

New vocabulary is presented in the Listen and Discuss

Introduction

opening presentation and at key points throughout each unit. The words and expressions are then practiced and recycled throughout the unit and subsequent units. Unit vocabulary lists are found at the back of the book and can be used for review.

Use the visuals in the Listen and Discuss presentation to explicitly teach the vocabulary.

- Pronounce each word and have students repeat it. Alternatively, play the audio for students to listen and repeat.
- Provide example sentences, descriptions, and explanations using the opener visual.
- Ask students to provide examples, descriptions, and explanations of their own to determine comprehension.
- Have students keep a vocabulary notebook. Suggest they use their own words to define the terms and incorporate visuals whenever possible.
- Use the photos and illustrations throughout the unit to practice the words. Have students describe the pictures as well as ask and answer questions about the pictures.
- Play games with the words.

Grammar

There are many methods and approaches to grammar teaching. Here are some suggestions that may be useful:

- Preteach the target structure by reviewing sentences from the Listen and Discuss and Pair Work sections that use the structure.
- Model the example sentences in the Grammar section.
- Make personalized statements or ask personalized questions that use the target structure.
- Ask students to provide personalized examples of sentences that use the structure.
- If appropriate, create visuals or graphics to illustrate the structure.
- If appropriate, use gestures or pantomimes to illustrate the structure.
- Have students write grammar exercise answers on the board, highlighting the target structure and explaining their answers.
- Have students work in pairs to complete and/or correct grammar exercises.
- Use sentences from the grammar exercises for dictations.

Listening

The **MegaGoal** series offers a wide variety of listening "texts," including conversations, announcements, advertisements, news reports, etc.

Before students listen to a recording, elicit predictions about what they are going to hear. Have them look at any related visual material or ask them to read the questions they have to answer. This way, students will have a clearer idea of what to listen for.

Listening can be a difficult skill for some students. These students worry that they will not understand anything. Let them know that it is not necessary to understand every single word, but to get the general idea. Play the recording as many times as necessary, without getting caught up in explanations of every word or phrase. Focus students' attention on the completion of the task. Letting students work in pairs may lessen anxiety.

Conversation

The following is a suggested technique for presenting the Conversation section in the Student Book:

- Use the picture(s) to introduce new vocabulary and expressions. Have students predict what the Conversation is about.
- Go over the questions in About the Conversation before students listen to the audio.
- Play the audio or read the Conversation. If appropriate, have students look at the picture(s), but keep the text covered. Tell students that they don't have to understand everything—but they should try to use what they know to figure out what they don't know. As an alternative, you may find it helpful to have students look at the text while listening to the audio, or you may prefer to have them read the Conversation silently before you play the audio or read the Conversation aloud.
- Play the audio or read the Conversation again while students look at the text.
- Ask students to read the Conversation silently. Ask them to figure out the meaning of unknown words from context.
- Have students answer the About the Conversation questions. They may do this individually, in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.
- Have students work in pairs or groups and read the Conversation using the "Read and Look Up" technique. In this technique, students look at a sentence, look up, and say what they have just read. This technique helps students develop confidence in saying words and sentences in English. It aids them in mastering the mechanics of the language, sounds, and vocabulary, and helps prepare them for freer use of English.
- Have students act out the Conversation.

Reading

The **MegaGoal** series offers a wide variety of reading text types (advertisements, magazine articles, encyclopedia entries, letters, emails, etc.).

For every Reading, have students try to predict and preview the content of the reading before they read. This includes (1) looking at the pictures, (2) talking about what they know about the topic, (3) looking for familiar words, and so on. Let students know that it is usually not necessary to understand every word.

In addition, you can set a purpose for reading. For example, you can ask students to look for the most important ideas or to look for the answers to one or more questions in the After Reading section.

You can present the Reading in a variety of ways. In fact, it is recommended that you take a variety of approaches: (1) students can first listen to the audio recording of the Reading with their books closed; (2) students can listen to the audio of the Reading and follow along in the text (this helps students to “chunk” the text—that is, to see which words go together as meaningful units in English); (3) students can read silently first; (4) pairs can read different sections or paragraphs and report to each other on what they read.

Encourage students to try to guess the meaning of unfamiliar words from context. Encourage them to ask you or look in dictionaries if they still have difficulty. Also encourage students to make lists of words that they want to learn.

Another effective way to review language and content in a Reading is to retell the story or article in one’s own words—orally or in writing. Encourage students to work in pairs and tell what a Reading is about orally. They should tell the main idea first. One effective technique is to summarize each paragraph, or to try to answer the questions *Who, What, When, Where, and Why*.

Writing

The **MegaGoal** series offers students practice in writing a variety of text types. These often follow the model provided.

Explain to students that writing is a process that requires prewriting, drafting, revising, editing/proofreading, and publishing. Encourage students to brainstorm and take notes before drafting. After drafting, they should peer-edit each other’s work. Finally, they should use these suggestions to create their final product. You may also want to provide students with a scoring rubric by which you will be evaluating their work. Criteria for scoring might include: ideas, organization, word choice, sentence fluency, grammar, punctuation.

Encourage students to keep a separate notebook for their writing. You and the students can use these notebooks to assess students’ progress in English.

Form, Meaning and Function

The **MegaGoal** series offers plenty of opportunity to recall and recycle previously taught structures and functional language as well as introducing new linguistic and communicative knowledge along the way.

Encourage students to recall what they remember about the form if previously taught and give them plenty of examples which demonstrate alternative meanings and uses of that form.

Give students ample opportunity in the lesson to practice the new function of a familiar form in a meaningful context by encouraging them to fully participate in communicative tasks.

Projects

The following are some practical guidelines for the Projects.

- Try to have each group include students of different proficiency levels in English.
- Make sure that students have access to the materials to do a task, such as magazines, large pieces of paper or cardboard, paints or colored pencils, scissors, and so on.
- Help students break down the task into its basic components; for example, a list of questions to answer, a list of materials to get, a format for the final product, and so on.
- Encourage students to assign different roles to different group members.
- Provide students with guidelines for making oral presentations. These include writing down notes on the information they want to present, ideas for how to organize the presentation, ideas on how to divide the presentation among different students, and so on.
- Provide a forum for students to “publish” their work. This may be on displays in the classroom or in the school. Students might present the results to other classes, not just to their class.

Chants

Using chants in the classroom will enrich learning in an entertaining way, motivate students, and generate enthusiasm. The **MegaGoal** series includes two original chants in Books 1–2. Activities to learn vocabulary and practice the four skills are included with each chant. When presenting the chants, you can follow the same presentation steps as with the Reading sections, whereby you activate students’ prior knowledge about

Introduction

the chant or its theme, introduce the lyrics as you play the chant, use cloze activities to test listening skills, etc. Once students understand the meaning of the lyrics, you can work on pronunciation and rhythm. Additional games and the personalization of the chant lyrics, where students change the lyrics to reflect their own lives, will allow students to be more creative with English in a fun and memorable way.

General Teaching Suggestions

English in the Classroom

Ideally, teachers should use authentic English in the classroom as much as possible. They should also encourage students to speak English as much as possible. Apart from what are strictly teaching activities, English can be used for taking attendance, for school announcements, and for explaining activities and assigning homework. This way, students see English as a vehicle for communication and not just an academic subject to be studied. If students are expected to use English all the time in the classroom, they will be giving themselves the opportunity to practice much more of the language.

Differentiating and Individualizing

Classrooms comprise a wide spectrum of learners who vary in how they learn best. Some students are visual learners, while others are auditory learners. Still other students rely on the written word to succeed. To accommodate all students, teachers need to respond to each individual and offer appropriate experiences. The varied presentation formats in **MegaGoal** allow for this differentiation of learning styles. The abundance of visuals, the audio program, and the variety of activity formats can meet the needs of any learner. In addition, the Teacher's Guide notes within the units provide suggestions for alternative ways to present material.

MegaGoal also recognizes students' individuality and encourages them to express themselves. Give students plenty of opportunities to express their ideas, their preferences, and their opinions. This way, students will start to develop a sense of identifying with the language, of owning the language, and of being able to use it to express real ideas.

It is also important to make connections between the characters and situations in the textbook with students' own lives. Find ways to relate the information in the textbook to local and national figures, places, historical events, etc. Let students bring their own experiences,

attitudes, and ideas into the learning process in order to make learning more relevant and memorable.

Pair Work

Pair Work offers teachers and students a number of benefits. Having students work in pairs is an ideal way to maximize opportunities for communication and practice. Many students feel a great sense of involvement when working with classmates. Another practical advantage is that while students are working in pairs, the teacher can spend time with individual students who need help.

For organizing students into pairs, the simplest method is to have students work with the person sitting next to them. Alternatively, the students in the first row can turn around to make pairs with the students in the second row, and so on. Be sure to mix up the pairs periodically to give students a chance to work with other classmates. Ask students to stand in line in order of birth date, height, alphabetical order, etc., and pair students standing next to each other.

Cooperative Learning

MegaGoal provides students with many opportunities to work together to complete a task. The Project section of most units is one such opportunity.

To help ensure the success of such activities, make sure that groups are balanced in terms of language ability and proficiency. Let students determine the different roles that they might play (recorder, artist, researcher, and so on). The teaching suggestions for the Project sections in this Teacher's Guide provide a lot of helpful information for you and students for organizing and managing projects. Most of the Projects in the Student Book are designed for groups of four to six students.

There are many techniques to encourage cooperative work, even in everyday classroom activities:

- **Numbered Heads Together.** Each student in a group takes a number (for example, 1, 2, 3, or 4). You present a question. Students in the group work together to get the answer and make sure that all the students in the group know the answer or can do the activity. To check for accountability, call on, for example, all the "number 1s" to give the answer.
- **Pairs Check.** Pairs take turns interviewing one another. Then two pairs join together. Each student tells what he/she learned about his/her partner.
- **Think-Pair-Share.** Students think about a topic or question posed. They pair up with another student to discuss it. They then share their thoughts with the class.
- **Jigsaw.** Each student becomes an expert on a topic

(or on one part of a Reading). That student teaches what he/she knows to a small group. This is a way to present a Reading: each student reads a different paragraph and the groups work together to get the important information from the Reading.

Reading Strategies

Researchers are giving more and more attention to how language learners learn to read. The **MegaGoal** series contains explicit reading strategy tips for helping students to become better readers in the Teacher's Guide. These strategies relate specifically to the Reading, but can also be used for the presentation material, the Conversations, and activities that require reading. Periodically review the tips throughout the program to help students apply them automatically.

Grammar and Vocabulary Review

The Photocopiable Activities provide additional practice and consolidate the grammar and vocabulary of each unit. They can be used as homework after Self Reflection, if students require more work on those areas or as optional practice for early finishers in class.

- Tasks and activities vary in this section and include question types such as blank fills, matching, collocations, sentence formation, answering open or closed questions or responding to situations.
- The Photocopiable Activities can be combined with additional activities and used as self-assessment tasks in Self Reflection.

Monitoring Students and Correcting Errors

As students do pair and group activities, circulate around the room. Check that students are using English and are on task. This is an effective way to see how students are progressing.

In terms of error correction, it is recommended that you don't interrupt students to make corrections. Instead, make a list of major mistakes or misunderstandings, and reteach once the pair or group activity is completed. It is important to realize that errors are a natural part of the learning process and that students may recognize errors when doing grammar activities but produce them while speaking.

Give priority to errors that interfere with understanding. Less important errors can be ignored, at least while you are focusing on major errors. Another technique is to tell students that you will correct only errors of a specific type or a particular grammar point in a forthcoming activity.

Ongoing, Informal Assessment

There are many opportunities in **MegaGoal** for ongoing, informal assessment. Some examples are:

- Student work in the About You section can be monitored to see how fluently students express basic ideas in English.
- Student work on the Project provides an opportunity for you to assess students' use of English informally as students complete work on a topic.
- Short dictations can provide quick and easy mini-assessments. For example, to assess understanding of questions and answers, dictate three or four questions. Then have students answer each of the questions. Next, have students exchange and correct papers. This provides students with immediate feedback. Another way is to write scrambled words or sentences on the board for students to unscramble.
- Material in the Workbook can be used to measure individual students' mastery of the material.
- Students evaluate their own progress at the end of every unit by completing the Self Reflection charts.

Self Reflection

- The Self Reflection page of the course fully acknowledges and supports ongoing, informal assessment in a truly learner-centered way. It allows and trains learners to think back on the topics, tasks and language presented and practiced in the unit, step by step in a systematic and consistent manner, utilizing all available knowledge resources.
- Allotting time and space within the syllabus to this process takes the methodology of the course beyond minimal adherence to principles of reflective learning, common in most courses. Self reflection is rightfully recognized as an integral part of the learning process throughout.
- It is essential to treat this section, as a learning skills development component. This is the time for students to decide for themselves what they can or cannot do and to what extent; and to make a plan of action to remedy problems, clarify points, confirm and consolidate learning.
- The Self Reflection section is an invaluable tool for the teacher, as it provides evidence of learning and indicates areas for remedial work or expansion. Additional Activity ideas as well as the Photocopiable Activities that have not been used in the lessons, can be used as tasks for self reflection.

Intro

1 Listen and Discuss



Read the texts below and match each one with the correct heading. Write in the blank.

Technology
TV Around the World

Unusual Buildings
Working Days

Ecotourism
Going Green



The paper vs. eBook debate, which has been going on for several years, does not seem to serve any real purpose. Digital has become an integral part of life; so much so, that we fail to notice it. Hard copies, on the other hand, are still available, but for how long?



The Makkah Clock Royal Tower is among the top tallest buildings in the world. The clock face is large enough to be seen from 25 kilometers away. Have you seen it?



Ecotourism allows travelers to observe and experience life and culture in a natural and often undisturbed location that lends itself to activities like hiking, climbing, rafting etc. This type of tourism often provides funds for conservation and contributes to the development of the local economy. Would you be interested in this type of travel?



Cable television is gradually being replaced by the Internet. Recent research indicates that a substantial number of cable subscribers in their late twenties to mid-thirties are planning to discontinue their cable TV subscriptions. On-demand viewing appeals a lot more to people who want to watch a show of their choice at a time that suits them best. What is your view?



Unit Goals

Vocabulary

eBook
ecotourism
buildings
cable television
work routine
climate change and “green” policies

Functions

Express opinion, feeling and preference
Agree and disagree
Ask for and give information and instructions
Warning and advice

Grammar

Had better
Recycling/using familiar verb forms, prepositions, modifiers, inversion, conditioners

Listening

Listening for fact, speaker attitude, relationship

Pronunciation

Recycling and using familiar stress and intonation patterns

Answers

page 2 Technology
Unusual Buildings
page 3 Ecotourism
TV Around the World

page 3 Working Days
Going Green

- Ask students to read through each text and highlight any new information that they find. Then have groups report and comment. Some students are likely to know more about some of the topics. Encourage them to comment and exchange information at this stage. Elicit or explain the meaning of any words or expressions students don't understand.

- Write these words and phrases on the board. Have students find them in each text and try to work out their meaning from context.

debate : *a discussion between people in which they express different opinions on an issue or subject*
an integral part of life: *very important and necessary, essential*

a location that **lends itself** to activities: that is good/ suitable for

funds: *available money*

conservation: *the protection of animals, plants, and natural resources*

cable television: *a system in which television signals are sent through cables rather than through the air*

discontinue : *end, stop*

subscription: *an agreement with a company or organization to get a publication or service regularly and that you usually pay for in advance*

on-demand viewing: *available when needed or wanted*

retirement: *the act of ending your working or professional career, the period after ending your career*

timely : *happening at the correct or most useful time*

prevent the implementation: *stop the use / practice, stop putting into action*

- Have students find and highlight at least one sentence in each text that expresses an opinion/ point of view. Tell them that they will have the opportunity to express their own view later in the lesson.

Warm Up

- With books closed, ask students:
Do you watch television? What kind of shows do you watch?
What do you know about ecotourism?
Do you prefer to read paper books or eBooks?
Name some of the tallest buildings in your country.
Do you follow a set routine every day?
What do you know about climate change?
- Encourage students to say whatever they know or think. You don't need to spend too long on each question. You are simply using the questions to activate prior knowledge.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Have students look at the pictures on pages 2 and 3 and quickly make guesses about the topics. Make a note of their answers on the board.
- Have students read the directions.
- Play the audio for the texts on pages 2 and 3. Have students listen with their books closed.
- Play the audio again. Ask students to read along in their books.
- Put them in small groups or pairs and give them a few minutes to write the headings in the blanks.

2 Pair Work

- Go over the directions.
- Have students find and read the last question in each text, to make sure they are all clear about what they are expected to do.

Direct the students' attention to the expressions in the *Expressing Opinion/ Feeling/ Preference – Agreeing/ Disagreeing* box and go through the expressions. Give some examples, ask:

What do you think of Ecotourism?

Call on volunteers to answer the question using expressions from the box, for example:

I admire people who do it but I can't see myself doing it. What's your view on eBooks? I'm not sure I can see why people are still debating the point. Everything seems to be digital these days.

Explain: **We're on the same page here** to express strong/ total agreement.

I see your point but (don't you think it's worth considering a different option?) Explain that we use this expression to express tentative agreement/ disagreement.

I think I'd opt for (cable television) to express preference, i.e. I would choose cable television.

- Put the students in groups and have them discuss the points raised by the questions. As students work go around and help as needed with vocabulary. Write some of the more useful words and phrases that students ask for on the board for everyone to see.



It is not unusual for working people to complain about having to follow the same routine day in and day out. Come retirement time, however, a great number of them feel lost and suffer physically and psychologically through the absence of the same routine. Why do you think this happens?

Climate change has been a critical issue in recent years due to its destructive consequences caused by natural disasters, such as, storms, hurricanes, flooding and landslides. Deciding to "go green" has presented a dilemma for countries which have to choose between immediate economic growth and greener policies. This has delayed timely action and prevented the implementation of "green" measures that can contribute to the reduction of carbon emissions. What is your view?

2 Pair Work



Answer the question at the end of each text and discuss. Express your opinion and agree or disagree. Use phrases from the box.

Expressing Opinion/ Feeling/ Preference - Agreeing/ Disagreeing

What do you think of ...? I think it's interesting / an amazing achievement.

What's your view on ...? I'm not sure. I can see why ... but I can't see eye to eye with ...

Don't you think it's an interesting / original ...? No, not really.

We're on the same page here.

I see your point but / I have no doubt that your view is valid, but I personally feel that...

I admire people who ... but I can't see myself doing it.

Which would you choose? I prefer... / I think I'd opt for ... / go for (conventional travel).

3 Conversation



Listen and practice reading the conversation in pairs. Then act it out.

Librarian: Can I help you?

Hashim: Could you please tell me where I can find biology books and research documents?

Librarian: What exactly are you looking for?

Hashim: It's about a science project and I need to gather information, in order to create a timeline for biological research over the last 60 years or so.

Librarian: I see. That must be interesting. It can't be easy to collect all the information and choose the key items you need but I'm sure you'll manage.

Go to aisle 5 and look up the biology section. I'm sure you'll find what you need.

Hashim: I hope so. Thanks for your help.

Librarian: One more thing! The research documents are in the reference section. You have to sign and get a key. You can look up what you need and read documents in the reference section, but you mustn't take anything out.

Hashim: Can I photocopy any pages?

Librarian: You'll have to check with me first. You are not allowed to photocopy old manuscripts.

Hashim: I understand. Thanks again.

(an hour later)

Ali: I've noticed you have to use a whole pile of books. Are you doing research?

Hashim: Yes, I'm trying to. But I'm not sure I can do it within the deadline. I'll need to spend days in the library, reading and making notes.

Ali: Don't you worry! Of course you'll make it. It seems impossible at first but you get used to it. Would searching online or using eBooks help?

Hashim: That would be awesome but all the computers are taken.

Ali: No, not really. How about using this one? I'm just about to leave.

Hashim: Are you sure?

Ali: Absolutely. I'll let the librarian know on my way out. You'd better move over right away, before someone else takes it. Here, I'll help you move your things.

Hashim: Thanks a lot. I owe you big time!

Ali: Not, at all. I'm sure you'd do the same!



Your Turn

Role-play a conversation like the one above with a partner. Use phrases from the box below.

Asking for and Giving Information / Instructions

Could you please tell me where I can ... / where the ... is? Go to (aisle 5) and ... / walk down (aisle 3) and turn right ...

What exactly are you looking for? Information / data ... / It's a project that I need ...

Asking permission

Can I photocopy ...? / Am I allowed to ...? / Is it all right if I ...?

Obligation / Ability / Prohibition

You have to/need to sign ...

You mustn't take anything out/touch anything ...

You are not allowed to...

3 Conversation

- Look at the photo and elicit ideas about the place.
- Ask students to think about libraries in groups/ pairs and say what people can do there. Ask them if there is a library in their school and if it is a *lending* library. (Explain that people can borrow books at a lending library and return them after a set period of time. Tell them that there can be a *reference section* or a *reference library* where readers can use the books, documents etc. but are not allowed to take them out.) Ask them if there is any other equipment in modern libraries that they know of, for example, computers, photocopiers, printers, etc.

 Write these questions on the board: **What kind of books and documents is Hashim looking for?** (biology books and research documents) **Which section of the library are the documents in?** (the reference section) Play the first part of the conversation and have students listen with their books closed. Call on volunteers to answer. Add one more question: **Why do you think Ali knows more about how things are done?** (He's an older, more experienced student.)

 Play the audio again. Have students listen and follow in their books.

- Put students in groups of three (one for each role). Have them practice reading the conversation. Tell students to try and act out the conversation as best they can. Encourage them to rehearse more than once. Advise them to look up after they've had a quick look at their lines and act out.
- Have them switch roles and repeat.
- Invite groups to stand up and act out the conversation.

- Go over the expressions in the *Asking for and Giving Information / Instructions* box.
- Ask students to try and think of their own examples, in pairs.
- Point out the expressions for *Asking permission* and *Obligation / Ability / Prohibition*.
- Have students find examples in the conversation and replace them with alternative expressions. For example, "You have to sign" can be replaced by "You need to sign"; "...you mustn't take anything out," can be replaced by "...you are not allowed to ...", etc.

Your Turn

- Have students read the directions. Tell them that they can use the same context, i.e. student, librarian, at the library with the student asking for information and an older student, or a different context, e.g. a large store, a bank, a museum with different roles.
- Put students in groups of three and give them time to decide on the situation and their roles before they practice.
- Give them time to rehearse. Encourage them to make notes. Remind them not to write down every single word as this is a speaking activity.
- Advise students to listen to each other and respond as naturally as possible while role-playing. Tell them not to worry about mistakes during the role-play. Encourage them to focus on meaning and communication.
- Invite volunteers to stand up and act it out.

4 Listening

- Have students look at the photo and talk about the people, where they are, and what they are doing.
- Go over the directions with students. Ask them to focus on questions 1 and 2, about the relationship between the speakers.
- 🔊 Have students close their books and listen to the conversation between the speakers. Elicit ideas about the speakers' relationship. Make sure students justify their answers.

Answers

Likely answers include:

friends - older to younger friend: Omar, the first speaker must be older because he advises Imad about what he should or shouldn't do and warns him about the consequences.

Instructor-student: possibly at university or technical college. Accept any answer that can be justified through content, attitude, and/or register/ style of language used.

- 🔊 Have students listen to the conversation and follow in their books. If necessary, play the CD again and pause after each speaker to allow students to repeat quietly in pairs.
- Put students in pairs and ask them to act out the dialog. Tell them to switch roles and practice again.
- Invite volunteers to act out in class.
- Go over the expressions in the *Warning / Advice* box. Have students find and highlight the expressions in the conversation. Then ask them to provide their own examples. Give them situations they can relate to in order to help them. For example, a teacher warning a student, a boss warning or advising an employee, etc.

- Ask student to discuss question 3 in their groups. Remind them that they have to justify their answers. If the members of each group do not reach a unanimous decision, i.e. if some choose statement A and some statement B, ask them to regroup with students who have the same opinion. Eventually, you should have a group A and B. Tell students to exchange ideas and prepare a brief presentation of their view and their reasons. Tell them to choose up to 5 speakers per group. Call on the first speaker of each group to present their view in about 2 minutes. The audience can comment or ask questions. The speakers of each group should defend their team's standpoint as they respond. Tell students that the team which manages to persuade more people to join them, wins.
- Have students read question 4 and discuss it in pairs. Call on students to report. Alternatively, you might choose to ask student to write a Dos and Don'ts list.
- Put students in pairs and ask them to role-play a conversation like the one they listened to. Remind them to use language from the box. Tell them that they can change the context of the conversation, i.e. decide on a different setting/ location, and people with a different relationship, time, activity etc. Invite volunteers to act out in class.

5 About You

- Have students read and answer question 1 in class, or circulate a paper where each student writes the number of hours they study. Write on the board: 1. from (minimum number of hrs) to (maximum number of hrs). Continue with question 2. Put students in groups and let them talk and compare answers. Call on groups to report.

4 Listening



Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.

1. What is the relationship between the speakers? Are they friends, brothers, other?
2. How do you know?
3. Listen and practice the conversation in pairs.

Omar: You'd better have your eyes checked if you don't want to get into serious trouble.

Imad: Yes, I know they feel all dry and puffy.

Omar: Have you been sleeping well?

Imad: As well as possible! I've been staying up trying to finish my project, and spending a lot of time in front of the computer.

Omar: Do you take breaks? You need to take a break every hour.

Imad: I'd never get to the end of it that way.

Omar: Well, you won't have the eyesight you need to get to the end of it if you don't have breaks! Another reason for taking breaks is to prevent damage to your back from endless hours of sitting at your desk.

Imad: But I'm young. Older people tend to have back problems.

Omar: You're wrong there. People can cause themselves damage at any age. What has saved you so far is the fact that you work out and do sports.

Imad: Yes, my parents have said the same thing!



5 About You



1. How many hours a day do you spend studying during exams?
2. How do you feel at the end of an examination period?
3. Which of the statements below do you agree with? Give reasons.
 - A. You'll do a better job if you stay up and work through the night.
 - B. You'll do a better job if you get some sleep and work in the morning.
4. What would you advise your friend to do/ not to do when preparing for exams?
5. Role-play a conversation like the one above with a partner. Use phrases from the box.

Warning / Advice

You'd better ... if you don't want to get into serious trouble.

You'll do a better job/ have a better ... if you ...

You won't ... if you don't / You need to ... or else

1 Connected by Technology

1 Listen and Discuss



Read the Internet profiles of the three teenagers.
Find two important details about each.

Name: Faisal Al Harbia
Gender: Male
Age: 19
Home: Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

I believe in living life to the fullest. My friends call me "adventure boy" because I'm very spontaneous and I love to do new things. There's almost nothing I won't try once. For example, I've gone bungee jumping and parachuting! I've eaten shark fin soup and chocolate covered crickets! I like to set challenges for myself, and I've found that I can do anything I set my mind to. I'm also a very straightforward person. I say what I mean and I mean what I say. If you ask my advice, you're going to get it!

[Send a Message](#)
[Add as Friend](#)
[Forward to Friend](#)
[Send a Smile](#)

Name: Luke Mitchell
Gender: Male
Age: 17
Home: London, England

OK. So the first thing you should know about me is that I'm obsessed with technology and media. I have to be "plugged in" all the time. I spend hours each day on the Web and playing computer games. I'm a lot like my dad. He's a software engineer and he loves technology and spending time on the computer, too. It drives my mom crazy. But just because I love technology doesn't mean I'm a loner. I'm always hanging out with my friends. Sometimes I spend hours talking with friends online. I'm a pretty funny guy and I like cracking people up. My approach to life is laid back. I like helping others lighten up and not take life so seriously.

[Send a Message](#)
[Add as Friend](#)
[Forward to Friend](#)
[Send a Smile](#)



Unit Goals

Vocabulary

Personality characteristics
Technology and the Internet

Functions

Ask for clarification and confirm
Discuss using technology for communication
Talk about personality characteristics

Grammar

Auxiliary Verbs

Listening

Listen for specific details

Pronunciation

Syllable stress on numbers

Reading

Amazing Internet Connections

Writing

Write about ways to socialize

Form, Meaning and Function

The Comparative and Superlative
Needs to be Done and Causative Have
Past Participles

- Put students into small groups and assign each group one of the profiles. Have each group find two important details about each and list three or four words or phrases from the profile that describe the person's personality. As an example, point out the word *spontaneous* in Faisal's profile. Elicit that *spontaneous* means that a person is ready to do something at a moment's notice, without a lot of planning. These are a few of the words and phrases students might choose:

Faisal Al Harbia: spontaneous, likes to set challenges for himself, straightforward, constantly late

Luke Mitchell: obsessed with technology, not a loner, funny, laid back

Ahmed Al Ali: down to earth, loves being outdoors, a good listener

- Have groups report on the important details and the words or expressions they selected for each person. Elicit or explain the meaning of any words or expressions students don't understand.

- Write these phrases on the board. Have students find them in the profiles and guess their meaning.

(be) plugged in = be connected to some kind of technology

crack people up = make people laugh

lighten up = not be too serious

down to earth = realistic and practical; a person who likes simple things in life, such as friends and family

Warm Up

With books closed, ask students: **How do you communicate with your friends when you're not in school?** Make some notes about their answers on the board.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Have students look at the notes on the board about the Warm Up discussion. Which of these means of communication involve technology?
 - Have students open their books and look at the pictures and profiles from the social networking site. If you haven't discussed this already, ask students what a social networking site is and which ones they and their friends use most.
- Play the audio for the profiles on pages 6 and 7. Have students listen with their books closed.
- Play the audio again. Ask students to read along in their books.

1 Connected by Technology

Quick Check

A

- Do the first item with the whole class as an example. Ask a volunteer to read aloud the sentence. Ask: **Who's the best person for this, Faisal, Luke, or Ahmed?** Elicit that Luke is probably the best answer because he likes technology and spends a lot of time online.
- Have students work individually to choose the right person for the other situations. Then have them compare answers with a partner. If their answers are different, have them discuss the answers.
- Check answers with the class by calling on students to read aloud a sentence and name the person they chose. Ask if everyone agrees. If some don't agree, have them explain why. Accept any logical answers.

Answers

Answers may vary. Sample answers:

1. Luke
2. Ahmed
3. Faisal
4. Ahmed
5. Faisal
6. Luke
7. Luke

Language Builder

Explain that a *proverb* is a common saying that usually states a general truth or gives advice.

B

- Have students read the proverbs silently. Answer any questions about vocabulary, but don't get into a discussion of the meaning of the proverb at this time.
- Put students in pairs to discuss the meaning of each proverb and choose which person it describes best.
- If students have trouble understanding the proverb *The apple doesn't fall far from the tree*, allow them to look it up or provide an explanation. This proverb means that children are similar to their parents.
- Call on pairs to explain the meaning of each proverb and name the person they think it describes. Ask if everyone agrees. If not, have them explain why not. Accept any logical answers.
- Ask students if they have any similar proverbs in their own language.

Answers

Answers may vary. Sample answers:

1. Faisal
2. Faisal
3. Ahmed
4. Luke
5. Luke
6. Faisal

2 Pair Work

- Put students in pairs to discuss the questions in the first item.
- Have students work individually to write their own profiles. They can use the profiles on these pages as models. As students are working, go around and help as needed with vocabulary. Write some of the more useful words students ask for on the board for everyone to learn.
- Have students exchange profiles with their partners and discuss them. Do they think the profile describes their partner well? What would they add to the profile?

Workbook

Assign page 1 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.



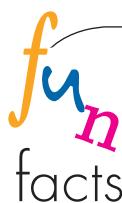
Teaching Tip

If students don't already have vocabulary notebooks, have them start one now. They should write new words that come up in class in their notebooks. As students become more advanced in the language, they will need more words that describe their own individual interests and activities.



Additional Activity

Have students role-play explaining a proverb from their own language to an English speaker. Put students in pairs. Each student thinks of a proverb in the student's own language and tries to explain what the proverb means to his or her partner using only English.



The first real social networking site was a site called Six Degrees. It was created in 1997. It allowed users to create profiles and list their friends. The site was not successful and closed in 2000. Some think it was just ahead of its time.

If I had to describe myself with one phrase it would be "down to earth." I also love being outdoors. Being in nature makes me feel peaceful and happy. I especially love the quiet of morning. One of my favorite things to do is wake up really early, before the rest of the world has gotten up, and go for a long hike.

I'm not always quiet, though. I have a few very close friends, and we spend hours talking and laughing. My family and friends mean everything to me, and they know that they can depend on me for anything. I'm a good listener. I'm not the type of person who tells people what they should do when they have a problem. Instead, I give lots of support and encouragement.

Quick Check

A. Vocabulary. Who do you think would most likely do the following actions—Faisal, Luke, or Ahmed?

1. Chat with friends over the computer.
2. Go camping with friends.
3. Go bungee jumping.
4. Help a friend with a problem.
5. Share his honest opinion about a friend's problem.
6. Make a friend laugh about his problem.
7. Spend evenings watching TV with his friends.

B. Comprehension. Discuss the meaning of these expressions with a partner. Decide which person each proverb describes best—Faisal, Luke, or Ahmed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Better late than never. 2. Nothing ventured, nothing gained. 3. Silence is golden. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. The apple doesn't fall far from the tree. 5. Laughter is the best medicine. 6. Honesty is the best policy. |
|---|---|

2 Pair Work

1. Which person is most like you? Why? Which person is most unlike you? Why?
2. Write your own profile. Exchange and discuss your profile with your partner.

1 Connected by Technology

3 Grammar



Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary verbs work together with main verbs. The most common auxiliary verbs are *do*, *have*, and *be*.

Use *do* with negative statements and questions and with affirmative and negative short answers.

She **doesn't** like social networking websites.

Do you send lots of text messages?

Did Thomas answer your email?

Yes, I **do**. / No, I **don't**.

Yes, he **did**. / No, he **didn't**.

Use *have* with present perfect and past perfect affirmative and negative statements, questions, and short answers.

She **has** (not) created her own website.

Has she posted any photos yet?

Have you charged your cell phone?

I **had** gotten his email an hour before he called me.

Yes, she **has**. / No, she **hasn't**.

Yes, I **have**. / No, I **haven't**.

Use *be* with progressive affirmative and negative statements, questions, and short answers.

She **is** (not) answering her cell phone.

Is your cell phone working?

He **was** using his brother's cell phone yesterday.

Were you surfing the Internet last night?

Yes, it **is**. / No, it **isn't**.

Yes, I **was**. / No, I **wasn't**.

Also use *be* with passive affirmative and negative statements, questions, and short answers.

The Internet **is** (not) used by millions of people.

Were you given a password?

Yes, I **was**. / No, I **wasn't**.

A. Circle the auxiliary verb in each sentence.

1. We are downloading an antivirus right now.
2. I do not check my email when I'm on vacation.
3. Online newspapers have become more popular than print newspapers.
4. Did you send her a message?
5. The Internet is used by millions of people each day.
6. My grandmother had never used the Internet before last week.
7. We have been online for a long time.

B. Write **yes/no** questions.

 I'm shutting the computer down now. Are you shutting the computer down now?

1. He found lots of good resources for his essay online.
2. She usually turns her cell phone off before class.
3. She's had that bicycle for a long time.
4. He's not answering his phone.
5. She has posted photos on her website.
6. We've downloaded the program we were looking for.

3 Grammar

Auxiliary Verbs

- Focus students' attention on the chart and give them a few minutes to read the explanations and examples.
- Remind students of some of the basic features of the use of auxiliary verbs.

The short answer echoes the auxiliary used in the question.

Do you...? Yes, I do.

Did he...? Yes, he did.

Questions usually follow the same pattern:
auxiliary verb + subject + main verb.

Have you charged your phone?

Did they call you?

After **do**, **does**, and **did** we use the base form of the main verb.

He didn't answer the phone.

- Write a few questions and answers on the board and have students come up and write the correct auxiliary in the blank. For example:

_____ you gone online today? (Have)

Yes, I _____. (have)

_____ he join the networking site yesterday? (Did)

No, he _____. (didn't)

_____ you chatting online last night? (Were)

Yes, I _____. (was)

_____ she like being outdoors? (Does)

No, she _____. (doesn't)

Language Builder

Point out that the verbs *do*, *have*, and *be* can also be the main verb in a sentence. For example, in the sentence *Tom did his homework*, *did* is the main verb. But in the question *Did he arrive late?* *did* is an auxiliary and *arrive* is the main verb.

A

- Ask a volunteer to read the directions and the first sentence aloud. Elicit that the auxiliary verb in this sentence is *are*.
- Have students work individually to circle the auxiliary verbs in the other sentences.
- Check answers by calling on students to read aloud a sentence and say which word they circled. Point out that in number 2, the verb *am* (*in ...when I'm on vacation*) is not an auxiliary verb. It's the main verb in that part of the sentence.

Answers

- are
- do
- have
- Did
- is
- had
- have

B

- Read the directions and the example with the class.
- Have students work individually to write the questions.
- Check answers by having students write their questions on the board. If there are errors in the sentences on the board, get the class to point them out and correct them rather than pointing them out yourself.

Answers

- Did he find lots of good resources for his essay online?
- Does she usually turn her cell phone off before class?
- Has she had that bicycle for a long time?
- Is he not answering his phone?
- Has she posted photos on her website?
- Have you downloaded the program you were looking for?

1 Connected by Technology

C

- Give students a minute or two to read the conversation silently. Ask a few questions for general comprehension. For example:

What does Ana make? (jewelry)

Is it a hobby or a business? (a business)

Where does she sell her jewelry? (online)

What is she making now? (a bracelet)

- Put students in pairs to complete the conversation. As students are working, go around the room and check answers. If some pairs finish early, have them help check the answers of another pair.
- When you're sure all the pairs have completed the conversation correctly, have students practice the conversation with their partner.
- Ask one pair to act out the conversation for the class.

Answers

1. Do
2. have
3. Are
4. am
5. have
6. is
7. am
8. Did
9. did
10. Do
11. does
12. do
13. do

D

- Focus students' attention on the photo. Ask a volunteer to read the directions and the example questions.
- Elicit one or two more questions that students might ask about the picture.
- Have students work individually to write their stories. After they finish writing, they should circle or underline all the auxiliary verbs in the story. As students are working, go around and check their use of the auxiliary verbs.
- Ask a few volunteers to read their stories to the class. How are the stories the same or different?

Workbook

Assign pages 2–4 for practice with the grammar of the unit.

Teaching Tip

When students are writing, tell them not to worry about things like spelling and grammar at first. They should just focus on putting their ideas down on paper. Then they can go back and make corrections as necessary.

Additional Activity

Have students work in groups to create a questionnaire about social networking sites for their classmates. They might include questions, such as *Do you belong to a social networking site? How often do you use it? Do you like it? Have you made any new friends?* Then have groups exchange questionnaires and answer them. Discuss the questionnaires with the whole class.

fun facts

One of the first online businesses to make online shopping popular was Amazon.com. Jeff Bezos started Amazon in 1995 to sell books. However, the company quickly expanded to sell other things as well. Now Amazon is an international company that sells a wide variety of products including books, electronics, and home furnishings. The company has warehouses and order centers in North America, Europe, and Asia.

C. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of **do**, **have**, and **be**.

Leila: (1) _____ you still make your own jewelry?

Ana: Yes, I do. In fact, I (2) _____ turned my hobby into a business.

Leila: Really? (3) _____ you selling your jewelry now?

Ana: Yes, I (4) _____. I (5) _____ sold more than 50 pieces of jewelry online this year. My jewelry (6) _____ bought by people all over the world. Right now, I (7) _____ making a bracelet for a woman in Shanghai!

Leila: (8) _____ you make that necklace you're wearing?

Ana: Yes, I (9) _____.

Leila: It's lovely. (10) _____ you have time to make one for me?

Ana: Of course.

Leila: How much (11) _____ a necklace like that cost?

Ana: I (12) _____ not accept money from friends! I'll make you a necklace, but (13) _____ not even think about paying me for it!



D. Look at the picture. Make up a story about it. Use sentences with auxiliary verbs.

Answer questions like these:

- Who are these people?

- How long have they known each other?

- How long have they been here?

- What are they doing?



1 Connected by Technology

4 Conversation



Grandma: What are you doing, Cara?

Cara: I'm texting Maria. I haven't seen her all week, so I'm just saying "hi."

Grandma: What's that beep?

Cara: It's Maria. She just sent a text message back to me.

Grandma: I don't understand. **How on earth** do you type what you want to say so quickly?

Cara: You don't actually type the words out. You use abbreviations and acronyms. **Hold on.** I'll show you. Right now I'm asking if she wants to come over and **hang out**.

Grandma: That's a lot to type.

Cara: Right. So instead I type "DYWT come ovr." Does that make sense?

Grandma: DYWT? What does that mean?

Cara: DYWT means "Do you want to." It's the first letter of each word.

Grandma: Oh. OK. Now what?

Cara: She'll respond in a second. (*beep*) There.

Grandma: What did she say?

Cara: (*spelling it out*) Gr8. B ovr n 10 mins.

Grandma: I think I **get it**. She's saying, "Great. Be over in ten minutes."

Cara: Now you've **got the hang of it**, Grandma!



Real Talk

How on earth? = How is it possible

Hold on. = Wait a moment.

hang out = spend time together informally

get it = understand

got the hang of it = started to understand something

About the Conversation

In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

Then switch roles.

1. What doesn't the grandmother understand?
2. What acronym does the grandmother learn?
What texting acronyms do you use?
3. Tell your partner about a time you explained something or learned something new from someone.

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Explain to your partner how to do something. Use phrases to ask for clarification and confirm from the box.

Asking For Clarification and Confirming

I don't understand.

How do you...?

Can you explain it?

What does that mean?

Does that make sense?

I get it.

4 Conversation

- With books closed, ask students what they know about texting. For example, ask: ***Is texting a common means of communication? How do people text in your language? Do you use abbreviations?***
 - Tell students they are going to listen to a conversation between a grandmother and granddaughter about texting.
- Play the audio. Tell students to listen with their books closed.
- Ask a couple of simple questions to see what students have understood. For example:

What's Cara doing? (texting her friend Maria)
Does Cara's grandmother know how to text? (no)

Play the audio again. Have students listen and read along in their books.

 - Have students practice the conversation with a partner. Then they switch roles and practice again.

Language Builder

Explain the words *abbreviation* and *acronym*. An abbreviation is a short form of a word. For example, *ovr* is an abbreviation of *over*. An acronym uses the first letters of several words to write a phrase. For example, *DYWT* means *Do you want to*.

Real Talk

- Model the phrases for students to repeat.
- Ask students who says each phrase and why. For example, ask: ***Who says How on earth?*** (Cara's grandmother says it because she doesn't understand how Cara can type so quickly.)
Who says Hold on? (Cara says it because she's going to show her grandmother how texting works.)
Who says hang out? (This is what Cara wants to do with Maria.)
Who says get it? (Cara's grandmother says this when she understands the text message.)
Who says got the hang of it? (Cara says this when she knows that her grandmother understands texting.)
- Write the following sentences on the board. Have students practice by completing these sentences with their own ideas and telling or asking a partner.

- How on earth can you _____?***
My friends and I often hang out at _____.
Hold on a minute. I have to _____.
I don't get it. Why do you _____?
I finally got the hang of _____.

About the Conversation

- Have students work in pairs and take turns asking and answering the questions.
- Check answers to questions 1 and 2 by calling on pairs to read a question and an answer.
- Discuss question 3 with the whole class. Ask several students to tell about a time they explained something to someone or learned something new.

Answers

- The grandmother doesn't understand how Cara types a text message so quickly.
- The grandmother learns the acronym, "DYWT," or "do you want to."
- Answers will vary.

Your Turn

- Call on a student to read the directions aloud.
- Direct students' attention to the box of phrases for *Asking For Clarification and Confirming*. Ask students about the items in the box. For example:

Which things would you say when you don't understand something or want an explanation?

(I don't understand. Can you explain it? How do you...? What does that mean?)

What do you say when you understand something?
(I get it.)

What do you say when you want to know if your explanation is clear? (Does that make sense?)

- Brainstorm with students a few ideas that they might use for the conversation. Remind them of their answers to question 3 in About the Conversation.
- Put students in pairs to create their conversations. Remind them to use the phrases from the box and also the phrases from Real Talk. Students should switch roles so each student gets a chance to explain something.
- Ask two or three pairs to present their conversations to the class. As they do this, have the class check off the phrases that they use to ask for clarification and confirm.

1 Connected by Technology

5 Listening

- Focus students' attention on the photo. Tell students that the father and son are talking about using the cell phone. Ask: **What do you think the father is saying? What do you think his son is saying?**
- Give students a minute to read the questions.
- Play the audio. Tell students to listen but not to write their answers at this time.
- Play the audio again for students to write their answers. Then play the audio a third time, pausing as necessary for students to check answers.
- Ask students if they ever have similar discussions with their parents or families about cell phone use.

Answers

1. 300 3. \$79 5. \$20
2. 950 4. \$0.40 6. one-third

Audioscript

Father: Michael, I want to talk with you.

Son: About what, Dad?

Father: How many minutes do you think you've used on your cell phone so far this month?

Son: I don't know. Maybe 300?

Father: Try 950! I checked our account. We pay \$79 for 900 minutes. You've used up the whole family's minutes and we're only half-way through the month.

Son: No! Really?

Father: Yes, really! And did you know that we pay 40 cents a minute for every minute over our plan? That adds up fast. The extra 50 minutes you have used so far will cost \$20.

Son: Wow. Sorry dad. I'll cut back on my calls.

Father: "Sorry" isn't enough. You're 17 years old. You need to start contributing some money towards the cell phone bill.

Son: Aw dad. How much?

Father: Since there are three people in the family, I think you should pay a third of the bill. And if you use more minutes than we have in our plan, you'll have to pay the extra charges.

Son: OK. I guess that's fair.

Father: What are you doing?

Son: Calling my friend, Tom. I have to tell him about this.

▶ Play the rest of the audio and have students circle the word they hear.

Answers

1. SEVENTeen 3. fifTEEN 5. THIRty
2. FORty 4. THIRteen

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Have students work individually to complete the chart.

B

- Have students compare charts with a partner.
- Check answers with the whole class. Find out which words students already knew or were able to guess, and which words they had to look up in a dictionary.

Answers

Related to Computers: networking, virtual, cyber, posted

Synonym for "Special": unique, extraordinary

Related to Health: asthma, paramedics

Workbook

Assign page 5 for additional reading practice.

Teaching Tip

Encourage students to become independent learners and not rely only on the teacher for answers. Students can learn from each other or look things up in dictionaries and other sources.

Additional Activity

Have students work in small groups and research cell phone plans available in their area. How much does the plan cost each month? How many minutes does it include? How much do extra minutes cost? Have them choose one plan and report on it to the class. Compare the plans the groups present. Which is best?

6 Pronunciation

- ▶ Play the audio for the explanation while students read along in their books.
- Model pronunciation of numbers, showing how the first syllable is stressed when counting but the last syllable is stressed when saying the time.

fun facts

According to a recent study, teens love their cell phones. Forty-six percent said a cell phone is necessary for their social lives. Teens prefer texting to talking. The main reasons teens like texting are that it's fast and they don't have to talk to the other person.

5 Listening



Listen to a father talk to his son about using his cell phone.

Write the numbers.

1. How many cell phone minutes does Michael think he has used this month?
2. How many minutes has he actually used?
3. How much does it cost for 900 minutes?
4. How much does each additional minute over the plan cost?
5. How much does Michael's bill add up to this month?
6. How much of the bill does Michael's father suggest he pay?



6 Pronunciation



When counting "teen" numbers, such as thirteen and fourteen, stress the first syllable. In most other cases, we tend to stress the last syllable in "teen" numbers. When using these words to talk about quantity, time, or money, stress the second syllable.

In "ten" numbers, such as twenty and thirty, always stress the first syllable.

Listen and repeat the sentences. Circle the correctly stressed numbers.

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1. SEVENTeen | sevenTEEN |
| 2. FORty | forTY |
| 3. FIFteen | fifTEEN |
| 4. THIRteen | thirTEEN |
| 5. THIRty | thirTY |

7 Vocabulary Building



- A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 12 and 13.

Put each word into a category in the chart.

asthma
cyber

extraordinary
networking

paramedics
posted

unique
virtual

Related to Computers	Synonym for "Special"	Related to Health

- B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

1 Connected by Technology

8 Reading



Before Reading

Has the Internet ever helped you meet or reconnect with a friend? Explain.

AMAZING INTERNET CONNECTIONS

We all use the Internet to connect with people. Using email, social networking sites, and instant messaging are ordinary ways that people connect. But at times, the Internet has been used to connect ordinary people in extraordinary ways.

SAVING A LIFE



12-year-old Sean Redden from Denton, Texas, was in on the Internet, playing a cyber fantasy world game. Suddenly someone came online, asking for help. The person said she was a Finnish business student who was locked in her college's computer lab. She said she was having an asthma attack and couldn't breathe.

Redden wasn't sure if this was part of the game as sometimes a few people lie on the Net. However, as he later told the *Dallas Morning News*, he decided it was, "too real to be a joke." So Redden called the police. With the additional help of international phone operators, Finnish paramedics found 20-year-old Tara Laintinen and gave her the medical attention she needed. Without the Internet and the efforts of a 12-year-old boy half a world away, she might not have survived.

FINDING YOUR DOUBLE



It was just an ordinary night on a crowded subway car for Patrick Swales, a 21-year old web designer in New York City. The car had just stopped at a station and the doors opened. Suddenly, he saw himself waiting at the platform. But the clothes were not really his style. What was he doing waiting there? He should be in the car. But he was in the car! By the time he realized that he had just run into his double, the doors had shut and they were moving. At that instant, their eyes met. Disbelief, amusement, wonder were all conveyed in that one look! They both raised a hand in an attempt to catch each other but it was too late.

Shaken by the encounter and determined to find his double, Patrick came up with a unique idea. He created a website called subwaymydouble.com. He posted his own photo and a description of the man he had seen in the subway, in the hope that someone would see it and make contact. He got the call two days later.

Now Patrick and his double are best friends. His name is Manuel and he is in New York studying web design! Patrick and Manuel have decided to take themselves out of the public eye, so they have stopped updating the site. Patrick posted this message on the website: "In our best interest, there will be no more updates to this website. Unlike popular TV series, you will have to continue the story yourselves. Best wishes to all and may you find your double some day."

8 Reading

- If possible, tell students about a time when the Internet has helped you find an old friend or meet a new one. Then, with books closed, ask students the **Before Reading** question: ***Has the Internet ever helped you meet or reconnect with a friend?*** Elicit answers from several students. Encourage others to ask questions.

READING STRATEGY

Using pictures and titles to predict

- Focus students' attention on the pictures on pages 12 and 13. Ask: ***What can you tell about the people in the pictures? How old are they? Where are they? What are they doing?***
- Have students read the titles on pages 12 and 13 and the introduction on page 8. Then have them tell you what they think each article will be about. Make notes of their answers on the board.
- Play the audio for the first story. Have students read along as they listen. Then refer to the notes on the board. Were their predictions correct?
- Have students read the story again. Ask a few questions to check comprehension. For example:

Saving A Life

What was Sean Redden doing? (He was playing a cyber fantasy world game.)

What problem was the Finnish woman having?

(She was having an asthma attack.)

Why couldn't she get help? (She was locked in the computer lab.)

Was this part of the game or was it real? (It was real.)

What did Sean do? (He called the police.)

- Play the audio for the next two stories and check the predictions on the board as before.
- After students listen to each story, have them read the story again. Ask questions to check comprehension. For example:

Finding your double

Who is Patrick Swales? (a 21-year old web designer)

Who did he see on the subway? (He saw his double)

Why didn't he speak to him? (The train doors shut and it started moving)

How did he find him? (He created a website and posted a description of the man he had seen)

What are Patrick and Manuel doing now?

(They are best friends.)

Reunited 60 Years Later

What was the relationship between Asma and Sabah in the past? (They were best friends.)

Why did they lose contact?

(Sabah's family moved away.)

Who helped Asma find Sabah? How? (Her grandson Khan showed her how to surf the Web, and they found Angela's phone number.)

What is the relationship between Sabah and Asma now? (They are inseparable.)

- Remind students that it usually isn't necessary to understand every word in order to get the main ideas of a story. But of course there are some words that are quite important. Tell students that they should each choose one word from one of the stories that they don't know and that they think is important.
- Ask students to write the words they have chosen on the board. Discuss the words with the class. If a student knows the meaning of a word, have the student explain it. Encourage students to use context to make educated guesses. Then explain the meanings of any remaining words or have students look them up in a dictionary.

1 Connected by Technology

After Reading

- Arrange students in groups of four. Assign one question to each member of the group. Give students a few minutes to make notes about the answer to their question.
- Have students ask and answer the questions in their groups. Each student answers the question he or she has been assigned, and the group comments on the answer. As students are working, go around and check that all the students are participating in the discussion.
- Go over the questions with the whole class. Have each group report on their answer to one of the questions.

Answers

Answers will vary.

9 Speaking

- Brainstorm a few ideas about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet. Draw a chart on the board like the one in the book and make notes in the appropriate sections.
- Note:** Keep the brainstorming session short and limit it to only one or two ideas for each section. You want students to go on and discuss their own ideas, not just copy what's on the board.
- Have students work in pairs or groups to share ideas.
- When students have finished, have them exchange their ideas with the whole class. How are their ideas similar or different?

Workbook

Assign pages 6-7 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

Teaching Tip

Modify activities to meet the needs of your students. For example, in some classes, students may need to concentrate more on accuracy and grammar practice than on fluency skills that they develop through discussions. It's important to gauge the needs of a class, and how those needs may change over time.

Additional Activity

Play a story-telling game. Bring a ball of string to the class. Write this sentence on the board (or use another idea): *I met an interesting person on the Internet.* Tell the class that this is the first sentence in a story and that they are going to make up the rest of the story. Give the ball of string to a student (S1) and have that student make up the next sentence in the story. S1 then holds on to one end of the string and throws the ball to another student (S2) who adds another sentence. S2 then holds on to his or her part of the string and throws the ball to a third student and so on. As students tell the story, they are creating a web of string around the room. (This also makes it easy to see who has and has not contributed a sentence. They're not on the web!)

Project: Social Networking Sites

Have students do research on social networking sites that their classmates and friends use. What are the features of the different sites? What are some of the possible problems in using these sites? What protections do the sites offer? Have students present their findings to the class.

fun facts

A theory known as "Six Degrees of Separation" says that you can connect any two people on the planet in an average of six steps by connecting people they know. Some social networking sites are experimenting to see if this is true. One experiment came up with 5.73 as the average number of steps it took to connect one user to another through people that one or the other knew.

REUNITED... 60 YEARS LATER



Asma, a 75-year-old grandmother of eight, enjoyed telling her grandchildren stories about her youth. These stories usually featured Sabah, Asma's best childhood friend. Asma and Sabah had been as close as sisters. Then, when the girls were 15, Sabah's family moved away and the girls lost contact. But Asma never forgot her childhood friend.

One day, Asma was telling her 13-year-old grandchild, Khan, a story about Sabah, when Khan asked, "Why don't you try to find her?" Khan got out his laptop and showed Asma how to surf the Web. A mere 30 minutes later, they had found Sabah! Asma's hands trembled as she dialed her old friend's phone number. When Sabah answered and Asma identified herself, Sabah burst into tears. By coincidence, Sabah was now living nearby.

Sixty years later, the women are inseparable once again. "My life has improved dramatically since Asma found me," says Sabah. "I never feel lonely anymore." Adds Asma, "It's as if we had never been apart. Sixty years have made no difference to our friendship!"

These are just a few of the incredible ways people have been brought together by the Internet. Every day there are more. Who knows what amazing Internet stories are unfolding at this very moment.

After Reading

1. In your own words, explain how Sean Redden saved Tara Laintinen.
2. What do you think of the way Patrick Swales found his double?
Would you ever do something like this? Why? Why not?
3. Think about the story of Asma and Sabah. Is there someone you would like to be reunited with? Who and why?
4. What do all of the stories have in common?

9 Speaking



Work in pairs or groups. Think about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet and make notes in the organizer. Discuss your ideas in class.

	Advantages	Disadvantages
1		
2		
3		
4		

10 Writing

- A. Look at the photos and define face-to-face and online learning.
1. Do you know anyone who is studying online?
Would you prefer to learn online?
Why? Why not?
 2. Do you prefer to communicate with your teacher and classmates face-to-face?
Why? Why not?
 3. What are the differences?
 4. Read the text and answer the questions:
 - What is the trend for university courses?
 - What kinds of students opt for online courses?
 - Why do some students enroll in face-to-face courses?
 - Which type of course is more successful?
 5. Read the text again and find out which paragraph:
 - presents information about F2F courses
 - sets the scene and introduces the topic
 - presents information about online courses
 - rounds up issues



Learning Face-to-Face and Online

There have been significant changes in education due to technology. The Internet has played a determining role in transforming the face of education as we used to know it. More and more universities and colleges offer F2F (Face-to-face) and Online course modes or blended versions that combine classroom F2F and email, social networking, or synchronous e-learning.

Research has shown that students choose different options, depending on individual preferences, learning styles, and practical considerations. For example, working adult students prefer online courses as they offer the flexibility that they need to combine learning with work. In other words, individuals, whose time and/or mobility are restricted, are happier with online courses.

On the other hand, a large number of students enroll in F2F courses as they feel that face-to-face

instruction and communication with peers will help them understand concepts better and learn more effectively. They are not opposed to using email or social networks to communicate with peers but not with their instructor. On the contrary, online students find it easier to communicate with instructors by email as it frees them of inhibitions they might have about asking questions or raising issues face-to-face.

Both groups defend their respective choice wholeheartedly. This is further demonstrated by success rates and learning outcomes. So, given a positive attitude to technology and the necessary skills, students will benefit from online courses as much as their counterparts in face-to-face contexts. What remains to be seen is if such courses will also benefit interpersonal skills and help people perform as members of a team.

10 Writing

A

- Direct students to the photos and elicit what they see. Ask them to compare the two photos and discuss differences and similarities. Write face-to-face learning and online learning on the board. Have students brainstorm ideas about each mode of learning. Call on individual students to report their answers.
- Organize students in groups. Read the directions for tasks 1 to 3. Give the groups some time, 5 to 10 minutes to discuss the questions. Circulate and monitor participation.
- Call on groups to report their ideas for the class. Ask students to find out how many students in class prefer face-to-face and how many online learning. Encourage them to move round and ask students in different groups.
- Read task 4 with the class. Play the audio and ask students to listen and follow in the text. Have them highlight as many answers as they can in the text.
- Ask students to read the text silently and confirm or find answers to all the questions in task 4. Have them compare answers with the rest of group.
- Discuss the answers to the questions in class.
- Have students read directions for task 5 and work individually to find the answers.
- Tell them to highlight words or phrases that they have used as clues and use them to justify their answers. For example: F2F course, face-to-face instruction, communication with peers as clues for paragraph 3/ presents information about F2F courses.

Answers

- Presents information about F2F courses: paragraph 3 (see example above)
- Sets the scene and introduces the topic: Paragraph 1: significant changes in education due to technology, Internet/determining role/ transforming face of education/ universities and colleges/ F2F/ Online course mode/ blended/ synchronous e-learning
- Presents information about online courses: paragraph 2 and end of paragraph 3 choose different options, individual preference, practical considerations/ flexibility/ combine learning and work
- Rounds up issues: both groups/defend choice/ success rates/ learning outcomes/benefit from online courses / face-to-face contexts.

- Call on volunteers to present their answers to the class.
- Have students work in small groups to identify the main characteristics of face-to-face, online and blended courses. Remind them to assign responsibilities to different members of the group and make sure one student in each group is responsible for taking notes that the group can use to present their answers. Circulate and monitor participation. Help when necessary.

Additional Activity

On the contrary For example On the other hand

The main advantage of synchronous e-learning is that participants can interact with each other and their tutor as well as work in smaller groups when necessary.(1) _____, should a participant wish to address a question or make a comment, all they need to do is signal their intention and speak, closely following standard norms of interaction.

(2) _____, if participants do not have access to a reliable connection, they can miss sessions for reasons beyond their control.

(3) _____, face-to-face courses can operate under minimal conditions if necessary without disruption in the event of power failure or inability to access the internet. This is further demonstrated by the fact that schools in a number of developing countries consist of as little as a straw enclosure and boulders as seats.

Answers

1. For example
2. On the other hand
3. On the contrary

1 Connected by Technology

B

- Tell students that they are going to write an essay comparing and contrasting the two ways of socializing and say which they prefer and why.
- Read directions 1 and 2 with the class.
- Draw the diagram on the board.
- Organize students in pairs and direct them to B and the diagram. Have them brainstorm and make notes on the features of each type of Socializing. Point out that the features they have in common can be placed in the centre where circles overlap. Indicate an overlapping area on the board.
- Call on pairs to present their ideas for the class. Have the rest of the class listen and add to their notes or comment.
- Have two volunteers write the notes in the right section of the diagram on the board.
- Have pairs discuss differences and similarities and make notes on the chart. Call on pairs to report their ideas in class. Ask the rest of the class to listen and comment, modify or add to their notes.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Read the first point with the class and ask them to find and highlight examples in the text.
- Call on volunteers and check the examples in class. Examples: On the other hand, On the contrary
- Have students discuss the meaning of each example, e.g. to emphasize, to add to, to contrast, to provide another option, to present a similarity, to present a difference etc.
- Have students read the opening lines of the model text and work in groups to think of a different alternative as an opening section of the essay and make notes.
- After several minutes, call on one student from each group to present their idea for the class. Tell students to listen carefully as each group presents, and then ask them to compare their answers.
- Give students a few minutes to check their notes and complete them or ask their classmates for help.
- Have them read 4 and 5 and explain that they are going to write a first draft using their notes which will be commented on and edited before re-drafting. Point out that in real life there are usually multiple drafts.
- Have students write individually using their notes. Then ask them to exchange and comment on/correct each other's essays.

- Give them some time to rewrite their essays. Call on some student to read their essays in class. Then circulate the rest of the essays in class so that students read as many essays as possible. Encourage them to make a note of anything they find interesting, for example a word or phrase, an expression and so on.

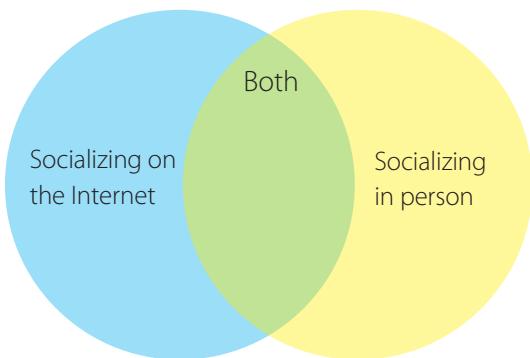
Additional Activity

Divide the class into two teams, one in favor of face-to-face learning and one in favor of online learning. Give the groups time to prepare their arguments before you begin.

Workbook

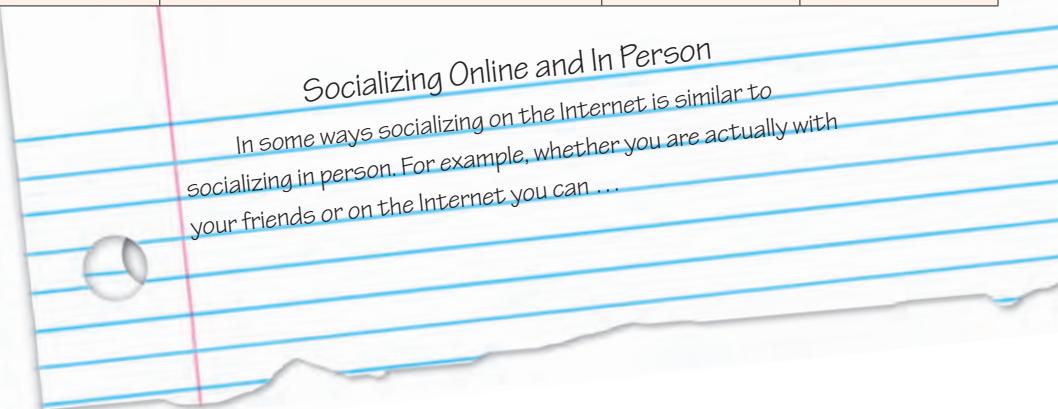
Assign page 8 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

B. Study the charts below. What is the topic for discussion shown in both?



1. Write an essay comparing and contrasting the two ways of socializing and say which you prefer and why.
2. Think about the features of socializing with friends in person or face-to-face and socializing on the Internet. Make notes in the chart below. Are there things that you can do in both cases?
3. Use your notes to write the essay.
4. Exchange and read each other's draft essays. Suggest improvements.
5. Revise, improve, and re-write your essay.

Socializing in person/features	Socializing online/features	Same	Different



Writing Corner

In an essay, you often have to discuss the similarities or differences between two different situations, opinions or ideas:

- use phrases to say what is similar; Likewise ..., In the same way ..., Similarly ..., as well as, ...both ...
- use phrases to say what is different; In contrast, ..., However, ..., On the other hand, ...,
- provide examples to illustrate what you mean with phrases like:
For example, as in ..., such as ..., in other words...

Underline examples of phrases used in the text on page 14 for comparison and contrast and explain why they are used.

Paragraph 4, line 1: Both groups defend... is used to compare.

- use phrases to state your preference and give reasons why: Personally, I prefer ..., I'd rather ...than ..., because ..., The reason for this is ...

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

The Comparative

Use adjective + -er or more / less + adjective to make the comparative.

Email is a **fast** way to communicate.

Instant messaging is **faster** than email.

Print newspapers are **popular**.

Online newspapers have become **more popular** than print newspapers.

Smartphones are **expensive**.

Cell phones are **less expensive**.

Note: The comparative is often used with *than*.

The Superlative

Use *the* + adjective + -est or *the most / least* + adjective to make the superlative.

Face-to-face courses are **the fastest** way to learn.

Our online courses are **the most popular**.

F2F courses are expensive. Blended learning is **less expensive**.

Our short online course is **the least expensive** way to study.

Some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

good–better–the best

bad–worse–the worst

A. Complete the sentences with the comparative or superlative forms of the adjectives in parentheses. Use *the* before superlatives.

1. The clock tower of the Abraj Al-Bait Towers in Makkah is one of _____ (high) buildings in the world.
2. Social networking is _____ (good) way to stay connected with friends.
3. The Taj Mahal in India is one of _____ (beautiful) buildings in the world.
4. _____ (popular) online video game on the market is 'Big Ideas 2'.

B. Look at the statements and choose the best option. Work with a partner. Give your opinion with some reasons. Use comparatives and superlatives.



**In my opinion, smartphones are a waste of money.
Cell phones are cheaper and less addictive...**

1. Smartphones / Cell phones are a waste of money.
2. The best way to make new friends is *by using social media / joining a school club*.
3. Car / Plane travel is more dangerous than car / plane travel.
4. Nowadays, people prefer to *shop online / shop at the mall*.
5. The best way for young children to learn is *by using technology such as computers, laptops and tablets / reading books*.
6. It is better to *take a train or a bus / drive* to college.
7. On weekends, I prefer to see *family / friends*.



11 Form, Meaning and Function

Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

The Comparative

- Choose volunteers to read aloud the sentences in the first part of the presentation and elicit the function. Ask: *What is being compared in each sentence?*
- Point out the three ways we form the comparative. Ask: *Why do we add -er to fast but add more (or less) before popular and expensive?*
- Elicit that we add -er to most one-syllable adjectives when we make them comparative, and use *more* and *less* with most three-syllable adjectives.
- Ask: *What word do we often use with comparative adjectives? (than)*

The Superlative

- Choose volunteers to read aloud the sentences in the next part of the chart. Have students identify the adjectives in the sentences. Ask: *How many different ways to learn have most likely been identified by the speaker? (three or more)*
- Elicit why -est and *most* have been added to the adjectives *fast* and *popular* respectively. (The speaker is comparing three or more things in terms of speed and popularity.)
- Ask: *Why do we add -est to fast but add most (or least) before popular and expensive?* Elicit that we add -est to most one syllable adjectives when we make them superlative, and use *most* with most three-syllable adjectives.
- Ask: *What word do we usually use before superlative adjectives? (the)*
- To make sure students understand the difference between the comparative and superlative, ask: *Why do we use faster in the sentence about email and instant messaging, but we use the fastest in the sentence about F2F learning?* Elicit that with the comparative we compare two people, two places, or two things; with the superlative we compare three or more items in a group or in the entire world.
- Finally, try to elicit as much as possible about the spelling rules and irregular comparative and superlative adjectives before directing students' attention to the last part of the presentation.

Language Builder

We can use both *-er* or *more* and *-est* or *most* with many two-syllable adjectives; for example, *politer* and *more polite* are both correct.

We usually use *-er* and *-est* with adjectives ending in *-y*, *-ow*, *-le*, and *-er*; for example: *prettier*, *heavier*, *narrower*, *simpler*, and *cleverer*.

We use *more* or *most* with two-syllable adjectives ending in *-ed*, *-ing*, *-ful*, and *-less*; for example: *more tired*, *more boring*, *more stressful*, and *more careless*.

A

- Ask a student to read aloud the first item and elicit the superlative form of the given adjective. Then have students do the rest of the exercise alone or in pairs.
- Have students that finish first use three adjectives in the exercise to make sentences about their country.
- Check their answers by having individual students read the sentences aloud.

Answers

- the highest
- the best
- the most beautiful
- the most popular

B

- Read through the directions to the exercise with the class and tell students to firstly read through the sentences alone and circle the choice which is true for them.
- Then put students into pairs. Students should take it in turns giving their opinion supported by reasons. Remind students to start appropriately. For example, *In my opinion...*, *I think...*, *I believe ...*, and so on.
- Students should report on their partner's opinions to the class.

Answers

Students' own answers



Teaching Tip

A good lesson has a beginning, a middle, and an end. The beginning might be just a short introduction reminding students of what they are going to study that day, but it is important to give students a sense of structure. In the same way, you should take a few minutes at the end of each class to summarize what students did and perhaps tell about what they are going to do in the next class.

1 Connected by Technology

Needs to Be (Done)

- Have students read the two example sentences in the presentation and ask: *Will the speaker fix the TV him or herself? (No) Does the speaker intend to clean the car seats him or herself? (No)*
- Ask students to identify the object in each of the example sentences. (TV, car seats)
- Read the explanation and explain that we use this structure when we want someone else to perform a service for us.
- Elicit more examples from students and write the examples on the board, identifying the object and highlighting the structure: *needs to be* + past participle verb. For example,
My smartphone needs to be upgraded.
My coat needs to be dry-cleaned.
My car needs to be serviced.

Have/Get Something (Done)

- Go through the examples with students and elicit or explain that this structure is used in the same way as the previous one. (ie When we want someone else to perform a service for us.)
- Call on volunteers to identify the object in each example sentence. (room, air conditioner, house)
- Call on volunteers to identify the time and the tense being used in each example sentence. For example, *We're having the rooms decorated.* (at the moment/present progressive)
We're going to have the air conditioner repaired. (future intention/going to do)
We had the house painted. (past time, finished action/simple past tense)
- Ask students to identify the past participles and write the base form, simple past and past participle for each one on the board:

decorate	decorated	decorated
repair	repaired	repaired
paint	painted	painted
- Elicit that these are regular verbs and direct students to the back of the Student Book page 106 for a list of irregular verbs. Ask them to find the past participle for the verb: *break (broken)*

Past Participles as Adjectives

- Turn back to page 17 in the Student Book and call on volunteers to read out the example sentences which use past participles as adjectives.

C

- Have students read through the conversation alone and answer the questions: *What are the problems? Who will fix the car?*
- Students should work to complete the exercise alone and then compare their answers with a partner.
- Go round the class and students have the right answers.
- Call on two volunteers to role-play the conversation for the class.

Answers

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. have had | 6. to be repaired |
| 2. isn't starting/ doesn't start | 7. is falling off/ fell off |
| 3. might be | 8. to be fixed |
| 4. to be recharged | 9. have (everything) fixed |
| 5. had (a new battery) put in | 10. said |

D

- Students work in pairs to complete the exercise and then report on their partner's answers to the class.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers.

- I need to have a website created.
- I have to have my printer fixed.
- I have my laptop computer serviced.
- I need to have my digital photos printed.
- I will get the screen on my tablet replaced soon.

Workbook

Assign pages 9-10 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.



Teaching Tip

When preparing for the lesson, think about how you're going to use the board. For example, what can you put on the board before class starts so that you won't have to use valuable class time to write on the board? Since students are often not doing anything when teachers write on the board, the pace of the class can be impacted.

Need to Be (Done)

The TV **needs to be fixed**.

(= Someone needs to fix the TV.)

The car seats **need to be cleaned**.

(= Someone needs to clean the car seats.)

Have/Get Something (Done)

Use *have* or *get*, with the past participle, when someone else performs the service for you.

The rooms need to be decorated.

We're **having/getting** the rooms **decorated**.

The air conditioner needs to be repaired.

We're going to **have/get** the air conditioner **repaired**.

The house needed to be painted.

We **had/got** the house **painted**.

Past Participles as Adjectives

break—**broken**

The cell phone was **broken**. I threw away the **broken** cell phone.

crack—**cracked**

The tablet's screen was **cracked**. I got the **cracked** screen replaced.

damage—**damaged**

The laptop was **damaged**. The computer technician fixed the **damaged** laptop.

- C.** Complete the conversation. Use the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

Khaled: I _____ (1. have) this car for six months, and it gives me all kinds of problems.

Joe: What is it this time?

Khaled: It _____ (2. not start) in the mornings.

Joe: Maybe it's because of the cold, or the battery _____ (3. might/be) low. It probably needs _____ (4. recharge).

Khaled: It isn't that. I just _____ (5. have/put in) a new battery _____, and it still won't start. I think the starter needs _____ (6. repair).

Joe: Is there anything else wrong with the car?

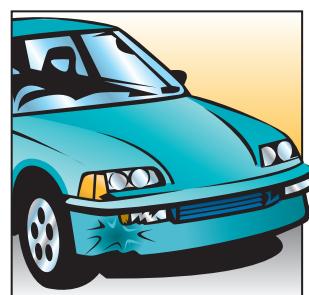
Khaled: Yes, the exhaust pipe _____ (7. fall) off, and the radiator is leaking. They both need _____ (8. fix).

Joe: Is your car under warranty?

Khaled: Yes, it is.

Joe: Then you shouldn't worry. We'll _____ everything _____ (9. have/fix) for you.

Khaled: That's what you _____ (10. say) the last time.



- D.** Talk about what you *get (have) done* regularly or *need to get (have) done*, or *will get (have) done* soon. Use the ideas in the box.

create a website • fix my printer
service my laptop computer • print my digital photos
replace the screen on my tablet



1 Connected by Technology

12 Project

Prepare a presentation for your class on **Things to Do on the Internet**.



1. Work in groups. Discuss things that you do on the Internet. Use the list below to help you and add your own ideas.

Interactive games	<input type="checkbox"/>	Blogs	<input type="checkbox"/>	Add your own ideas:
Competitions	<input type="checkbox"/>	Videos	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Problem Solving	<input type="checkbox"/>	News	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Role-play games	<input type="checkbox"/>	Information	<input type="checkbox"/>	
E-shopping	<input type="checkbox"/>	Education	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Social networks	<input type="checkbox"/>	Download programs	<input type="checkbox"/>	

2. How do you use the following? What are some of the advantages and disadvantages?
Add your own ideas to the list.

	Use	Advantages	Disadvantages
Social networks			
Blogs			
Threads/discussions			
Electronic articles			
Videos			
Information			
Websites			

3. How do you feel about the Internet as a medium? How reliable is it? Would you recommend it as a reliable and valid source of information? Why? Why not?
4. How does the Internet contribute to learning? Is it effective?
5. Use your notes to prepare a PowerPoint presentation or a poster. Work in groups or pairs.
6. Present in class.

When you prepare a PowerPoint presentation, remember to:

- focus on your audience: think about what they would like to hear or find out about
- focus on your content: be selective, use visuals and/or examples
- focus on your slides: plan what you are going to include on each slide (up to 5 points)

12 Project



- Direct students to the photos at the top of the page and ask them to discuss what they see in pairs. Call on volunteers to report their ideas for the class.
- Read directions for task 1 with the class. Ask students to go through the list and suggest more details. For example, which interactive games does each student like? Are there new interactive games that someone would recommend? Why would he/she recommend them?
- Organize students in groups and give them time to discuss the things they do on the Internet. Tell them to add their own ideas and provide information that they think the rest of the class will find interesting. Remind students to make notes as they discuss.
- Call on students from different groups to report their group ideas, comments and suggestions.
- Have students brainstorm on social networks. Ask questions like these:
What are they? Are there different types of networks?
Are they popular? Why? Why not?
Do you use social networks? Why? Why not?
- Have students work in groups discussing the rest of the items on the list. Ask them to make notes in the chart focusing on advantages and disadvantages.
- Have students use examples of social networks, blogs, electronic articles, videos, information and websites from the Internet.
- Direct students to questions 3 and 4 and have them discuss in their groups.
Remind them to assign roles/responsibilities to individuals in the group depending on their skills and abilities, including note-taking. Circulate and monitor participation.
- Call on a student from each group to report the group's ideas. If the group is split, i.e. if they disagree, call on someone else in the group to present the opposite view.
- Explain that when discussing 4, students will have to think of the internet as a learning resource and not only as the medium that defines the type of learning, e.g. online learning. In other words, have students think about the different uses of the internet in their class. Tell them to consider research and collecting data, obtaining information about issues and/or places that seem obscure and difficult, reading the news etc.
- Have students read 5 and 6 and outline the stages

that they will have to go through to prepare a Power Point presentation or a poster.

- Allow students to decide what type of presentation they would like to prepare; Power Point or poster? When they have decided reorganize groups into poster and Power Point groups.
- Give them some time to plan and assign tasks to members of the group.
- Point out the guidelines at the bottom of the page. Explain that the first two points apply to poster presentations as well.
- Set a time limit for each presentation and remind learners to rehearse in each group before doing the actual presentation for the class.

Additional Activity

Have students design and start a blog with a discussion on the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet in learning and research.

Organize students in groups. Have each group design a website and present it to the class. The class chooses the best design and sets up a website.

13 Self Reflection



- Divide students into groups and have them brainstorm on Technology in learning, life and work. Tell them not to open their books. Remind them that this is not a test and they should not feel that they have to remember everything. Write some questions on the board to help them, for example:
What was the main focus of the unit? Which aspect of technology did it provide more information and activities on? Which activity do you remember more clearly?
Which words and phrases do you remember?
Which part of the unit did you dislike? Why? Did you like any part of the unit? Which?
What do you feel you can do better now?
- Call upon a student from each group report what the group decisions were.
- Have groups compare their findings and make notes. For example, compare the words and phrases they remember and make a note of additional items.
- Have students scan pages 6 and 7. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked about this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:
Would you choose to communicate with any of the people whose profiles are presented? Which? Why? Why not?
Which qualities would you include about yourself?
- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 8, 9, ask them some questions. For example:
Have you created your own website?
How many different cell phones have you used so far?
Is your cell phone working? How do you know?
Have you joined a social network recently?
Were you asked to use a new password?
Do you use the same or different passwords for different sites?
- Have students work in pairs to discuss the questions. Ask them to compare with other students in class.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.

- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 10, 11. Call on volunteers to say what the conversation was and if they feel it was realistic, interesting, useful or boring. Ask them to give reasons for their answer.
- Have students say what they remember from sections 4 to 7 and make notes in the chart. Use questions like these:
Do you use your cell phone or landline when you are at home? Why? Why not?
Do you use your cell phone to speak to someone who is in the same building? Why? Why not?
What's the difference between 70 and 17?
Is 'asthma' a condition or a computer virus?
- Write Amazing Internet Connections on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember.
- Organize students in pairs and ask them to answer as quickly as they can to questions like these:
What would you do if someone asked you for help through the Internet?
Would you ever try to find your double? Do you think there is another person who is identical to you in the world? Why? Why not?
- Have students discuss what they liked and/or disliked and what they found difficult or easy. Ask them to make notes in the Self Reflection chart.
- Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.
- Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions. Check to make sure that they have chosen the appropriate suggestion from the last column in order to deal with difficulties.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 1:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 1:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 1:

Unit 1 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
ask for clarification and confirm			
discuss using technology for communication			
talk about personality characteristics			
use the auxiliary verbs <i>do</i> , <i>have</i> , and <i>be</i>			
use the comparative and superlative			
talk about what needs to be done			
use <i>have/get</i> something done			
use past participles as adjectives			

My five favorite new words from Unit 1:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 1:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

1 Listen and Discuss



1. Discuss one or two famous crimes. Who was involved? What happened? Where and when did it happen?
2. Read the newspaper headlines. Then read the newspaper articles about foolish crimes. Which headline matches which article?
3. Discuss the articles. Which criminal do you think is the most foolish? Why?



a

British Burglar Says "Sorry" With Flowers

b Killer Sentenced to Die for Second Time

c Credit Card Thief Signs Own Name

d The Impatient Inmate

e Paper Boy Steals Truck to Speed Up Deliveries

f Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car

1

GRAYSON, California, USA — An inmate who was just a day away from being released from jail fled the county prison on Thursday, according to the Grayson sheriff's department. When Bob Newton, 32, saw a gate that had been opened for a truck, he couldn't resist the opportunity to escape. Deputy Royjindar Singh saw Newton run through the gate and disappear into a cornfield. Newton is being pursued by a K-9 unit, a helicopter, police deputies, and the California Highway Patrol. Newton had been serving a five-day sentence for a misdemeanor reckless driving charge. When caught, Newton could now face up to a year in state prison.



2

KUALA LUMPUR, Malaysia — Malaysian police reported on Tuesday that two armed robbers stole a car, then hijacked a security van with \$1.3 million inside. However, the robbers encountered a problem when they tried

to transfer the money to their getaway car. The car the robbers had stolen was a compact car. It was so small that it could not carry all of the cash, and the robbers were forced to abandon more than half of it!



Unit Goals

Vocabulary

Crime
Punishment

Functions

Discuss crime and punishment
Read and discuss newspaper articles
Explain steps in a process

Grammar

The Passive
Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive

Listening

Listen for specific details

Pronunciation

Linking adjacent consonant sounds

Reading

Crime Puzzles

Writing

Write a story for a newspaper

Form, Meaning and Function

Simple Past
Used to and *Would*

Warm Up

With books closed, ask students about what kinds of crimes are common in their community and about recent crimes they've seen in the news. As students talk, make some notes on the board about crime words that come up in the discussion, such as ***steal, hijack, robber, burglar, thief, theft***. Also include words related to law enforcement, such as ***police, prison, jail, and sentence***.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Discuss the first introductory question with the whole class. Elicit two or three famous crimes students have heard of. As students talk, continue to add words to the vocabulary list on the board. **Note:** As the topic of crime can bring up sensitive issues, direct the discussion as much as possible to less violent crimes.
- Focus students' attention on the headlines. Point out that there are six headlines, but only three newspaper stories on pages 20 and 21. Have students read the headlines and skim the stories quickly to match the stories with the correct headlines.

Answers

Story 1: The Impatient Inmate

Story 2: Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car

Story 3: Credit Card Thief Signs Own Name

▶ Play the audio for the three stories on pages 20 and 21. Have students read along in their books.

- Have students read the stories again one by one. After they read each story, ask a few questions to check comprehension. For example:

The Impatient Inmate

Where does the story take place? (California)

How did Newton escape?

(He went through an open gate.)

What was Newton's crime? (reckless driving)

How long was his sentence? (5 days)

How long might Newton be in prison now when they catch him? (1 year)

Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car

What did the robbers do? (They stole a security van with \$1.3 million in it.)

What kind of car did they steal for the getaway car?
(a small, compact car)

What problem did they have? (There wasn't enough room in the small car for all the money they had stolen.)

Credit Card Thief Signs Own Name

What did the criminal steal? (a credit card)

What mistake did he make when he used the credit card? (He signed his own name, not the name on the card.)

Did he buy expensive things with the card? (No, he bought coffee, milk and cereal.)

- When you're sure students understand the main points in each story, put students in groups to discuss the third introductory question: **Which criminal do you think is the most foolish? Why?** Tell students that each group must choose one criminal they think is the most foolish.
- Have one person from each group report the group's decision and explain why.

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

- Draw a two-column chart on the board. Label the columns **Crime** and **Punishment**. Have students work with a partner and write as many words as they can from the stories under each header. Possible answers include:
Crime: drunk driving, armed robber, hijack, getaway car, stolen (steal), escape
Punishment: inmate, release, jail, prison, sheriff, deputy, serve a sentence, misdemeanor, accused, charged
- Invite two students to come to the board and write their words in the appropriate columns. Discuss the words with the class.

Quick Check

A

- Have students work individually to match the words with their meanings.
- Check answers by calling on students to read aloud the word and the meaning. Then have students find each word in the stories and read the sentences that contain the words aloud.

Answers

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. f 5. d 6. e

Language Builder

If students ask, explain that in the U.S. a *misdemeanor* is a crime that is not considered very serious. Someone who commits a misdemeanor usually pays a fine or spends a few days in jail. More serious crimes are called *felonies*. For a felony, a person can spend months or years in prison.

B

- Have students work individually to write *true* or *false* for each sentence. Then have students compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers by calling on students to read a sentence and say if it's true or false. For the false sentences have students say the correct story.

Answers

1. false (That's *The Impatient Inmate*.)
2. true
3. true
4. true
5. false (That's *Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car*.)

2 Pair Work

- Brainstorm a few crime stories that have been in the news recently. Remind students of some of the stories they mentioned earlier. Students might also think of crimes they have seen on police shows on TV. Again, direct students toward less violent crimes.
- Have each student choose a story. Give them four or five minutes to make some notes about the story. Go around and help with vocabulary as needed.
- Have students tell their story to a partner. They should include as many details as possible.
- Ask two or three volunteers to tell their stories to the whole class.

Workbook

Assign page 11 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.

Teaching Tip

When dealing with sensitive topics like crime in the classroom, be aware that some students may find the topic upsetting. Keep the mood in the classroom light and the focus on the less serious, more amusing aspects of crime.

Additional Activity

Practice the verb collocations with crime vocabulary. Write these sentences on the board and have students fill in the verbs. If necessary, write a list of the verbs in a different order for them to choose from.

The police _____ **the man of stealing a credit card.**
(accused)

He _____ **a two-month sentence for robbing the grocery store.** (served)

They're going to _____ **him from jail next week.** (release)

The police _____ **the robbers with a helicopter.** (pursued)

Two prisoners _____ **from the jail last night.** (escaped)



There are strange crimes and also strange laws. In Michigan, U.S.A., it's illegal to chain an alligator to a fire hydrant. In Oklahoma, a state in the U.S. that has no sea coast, it's illegal to hunt whales. In Athens, Greece, police can take away someone's driving license for being poorly dressed or dirty.



3



ROSARIO, Argentina — Argentine police didn't have much of a challenge finding a man accused of using a stolen credit card. The man used the credit card, then signed his own name on the receipts! The credit card was reported stolen from an unlocked apartment last month. According to the police, Alfredo Ramirez, 21, had used the credit

card to buy a cappuccino at a coffee house and to buy milk and cereal at a grocery store. The next time he tried to use the stolen card, it was declined and seized. Ramirez has been charged with three counts of unauthorized use of a credit card.



Quick Check ✓

A. Vocabulary. Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. _____ decline | a. without permission |
| 2. _____ unauthorized | b. to leave or give up something |
| 3. _____ to abandon | c. to refuse |
| 4. _____ inmate | d. a minor crime |
| 5. _____ misdemeanor | e. to take control of a moving vehicle by force |
| 6. _____ hijack | f. a prisoner |

B. Comprehension. Answer **true** or **false**.

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 1. _____ | <i>Credit Card Thief Signs Own Name</i> talks about a prisoner breaking out of prison. |
| 2. _____ | <i>Credit Card Thief Signs Own Name</i> reports the story of a credit card theft. |
| 3. _____ | <i>Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car</i> is about a hijacking and a robbery. |
| 4. _____ | <i>Criminals with Big Plans, Small Car</i> tells the story of robbers who did not prepare well for their crime. |
| 5. _____ | <i>The Impatient Inmate</i> reports on a robbery. |

2 Pair Work



Think of a crime story that you heard or read about in the news. Tell your partner about it, explaining the details.

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

3 Grammar



The Passive

Use the passive to put the focus on an action, rather than who did the action. The passive is formed with *be* (any tense) + past participle.

The crime **was committed** early in the morning.

The murder weapon **has been found**.

The murderer **will be brought** to justice.

To include who did the action, use the preposition *by*.

The burglar **was arrested by the police**.

Note: Newspapers often use the passive to report crime stories.

Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive

We use the past perfect to talk about an activity or event that was completed before another activity or event in the past.

Reiko **had forgotten** to lock the door before she left the house.

The criminal **had** already **escaped** by the time the police arrived.

We use the past perfect progressive when the activity was in progress at the time another activity or event happened in the past.

Juan **had been getting** cash from the ATM when he was mugged.

The driver **had been swerving** between lanes when the police officer stopped him.

A. Rewrite the active sentences as passive sentences.

💡 Police found the suspect wearing a cow costume.

The suspect was found wearing a cow costume.

1. A 92-year-old grandmother chased and caught the criminal.
2. The police discovered 54 moneyboxes in the suspect's home.
3. Police found the suspect hiding in a trash can.
4. The jury found the suspect guilty of stealing \$40,000 worth of bananas.
5. The police will fine him for littering the sidewalk.

B. Write the newspaper headlines as full, passive sentences.

💡 Killer Sentenced to Die for Second Time

A killer has been sentenced to die for the second time.

1. Man Accused of Driving Stolen Car to Court
2. Man Jailed for Driving Too Fast
3. Break-In Suspect Found Asleep in House
4. Man Found Guilty of Stealing Candy from Child
5. Man Arrested for Not Paying Library Fines
6. Businessman Fined \$35 for Illegal Parking



3 Grammar

The Passive

- Write these sentences on the board:

The police accused the men of stealing a car.

***The men were accused of stealing the car
(by the police).***

- Explain that in the first sentence the action (accused) is performed by the subject (the police). The verb *accuse* is an active verb in this sentence. In the second sentence the men receive the action. Here the verb *accuse* is passive. Draw arrows to show how *the men* moves from the object to the subject position.
- Have students read the explanation and the examples in the chart. Ask: ***What's more important in passive sentences, the action or the person or people who do the action?*** (the action)
- Direct students' attention to the three stories on pages 20 and 21, and have them find more examples of sentences in the passive. Ask about the tense of the verbs. For example:

Newton saw a gate that had been opened...
(past perfect)

Newton is being pursued... (present progressive)

The robbers were forced... (simple past)

The credit card was reported... (simple past)

Ramirez has been charged... (present perfect)

Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive

- Write this sentence on the board: ***When Alicia got home, the robbers had already left.*** Then write these sentences on the board and label them as 1 and 2 to show which action happened first:

(2) Alicia got home. (1) The robbers left.

Explain that the verb phrase *had already left* is in the past perfect. We often use the word *already* with the past perfect.

- Have students read the explanation and the examples.
- Have students find more examples of the past perfect in the stories on pages 20 and 21. For example:

... the gate had been opened...

Newton had been serving...

The car the robbers had stolen...

Ramirez had used...

Language Builder

Point out that in many cases we can use either the past perfect or the simple past or past progressive. However, the past perfect helps make the order of events clearer.

A

- Read the directions and the example with the class. Point out that the example sentence does not include the phrase *by the police* because it is not the most important part of the sentence.
- Do the first sentence with the whole class. Point out that in this sentence students should include the phrase *with by*. The detail about the grandmother is an important part of the sentence.
- Have students work individually to write the sentences. Check answers as a class.

Answers

- The criminal was chased and caught by a 92-year-old grandmother.
- Fifty-four moneyboxes were discovered in the suspect's home.
- The suspect was found hiding in a trash can.
- The suspect was found guilty of stealing \$40,000 worth of bananas.
- He will be fined for littering the sidewalk.

B

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Ask students what changes were made.
- Do the first sentence with the whole class. Elicit the sentence: ***A man has been accused of driving a stolen SUV to court.*** Point out that the present perfect is better for this situation since the time is not known or not important. Make sure that students add the necessary articles.
- Have students work individually to write the sentences. Check answers by having students write their sentences on the board.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- A man has been accused of driving a stolen car to court.
- A man was jailed for driving too fast.
- A break-in suspect was found asleep in the house.
- A man has been found guilty of stealing candy from a child.
- A man has been arrested for not paying library fines.
- Some businessman have been fined \$35 for parking illegally.

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

C

- Read aloud the directions and go over the example. Point out that the labels *1st* and *2nd* give the order of the events.
- Have students work with a partner to combine the sentences. Point out that they may need to change the order of the sentences.
- Check answers by having pairs write their sentences on the board.

Answers

1. Tania had been talking on the phone when she heard an intruder in the house.
2. Before he was arrested for stealing state funds, he had been a trusted politician.
3. Luckily, I had installed an alarm before the robbery took place.
4. Before he got into his car, he had been jogging..
5. I didn't have any money because my wallet had been stolen.

D

- Have students read the newspaper article through first, without writing, to get the main idea of the story. Ask a few questions about the main events in the story. For example:

What kind of crime did John Wilkinson plan?

(to rob a drugstore)

Where did he leave his car? (in front of the drugstore)

Why couldn't he get into his car after the robbery?

(He left his keys in the car.)

- Do the first item with the whole class as an example. Explain that this is a simple statement about one event in the past.
- Have students work individually to complete the paragraph. Then have students compare answers with a partner. When their answers are different, they should discuss whether or not both answers are possible.
- Check answers by calling on students to read the completed story aloud.

Language Builder

Point out the idiom in the story ...*went off without a hitch*. To *go off without a hitch* means to do something without having any problems or interruptions.

Answers

1. attempted
2. had spent
3. had bought / bought
4. had taken / took
5. felt
6. had planned
7. went
8. tried
9. ran
10. had left
11. tried
12. discovered
13. had made
14. had thought/ had been thinking / thought
15. had locked / locked

E

- Have students look at the picture and read the directions and the questions.
- Put students in small groups to answer the questions and make up a story.

Workbook

Assign pages 12-14 for practice with the grammar of the unit.



Teaching Tip

Tell students that as they become more advanced in English, they will come across more situations where there is more than one possible answer to a question or more than one way to say something correctly.



Additional Activity

Have students make a timeline of important events in their lives. Then have them write sentences with the past perfect. For example: *Before I started first grade, I had already learned to read.* Then have them share some of their sentences with the class.

C. Combine the sentences to create one past perfect or past perfect progressive sentence.

💡 (1st) Marco was walking down a poorly lit street. (2nd) He was mugged.

Marco had been walking down a poorly lit street when he was mugged.

1. (1st) Tania was talking on the phone. (2nd) She heard an intruder in the house.

_____ when _____.

2. (1st) He was a trusted politician. (2nd) He was arrested for stealing state funds.

Before _____.

3. (1st) Luckily, I installed an alarm. (2nd) The robbery took place.

_____ before _____.

4. (1st) He was jogging. (2nd) He got into his car.

Before _____.

5. (1st) My wallet was stolen. (2nd) I didn't have any money.

_____ because _____.

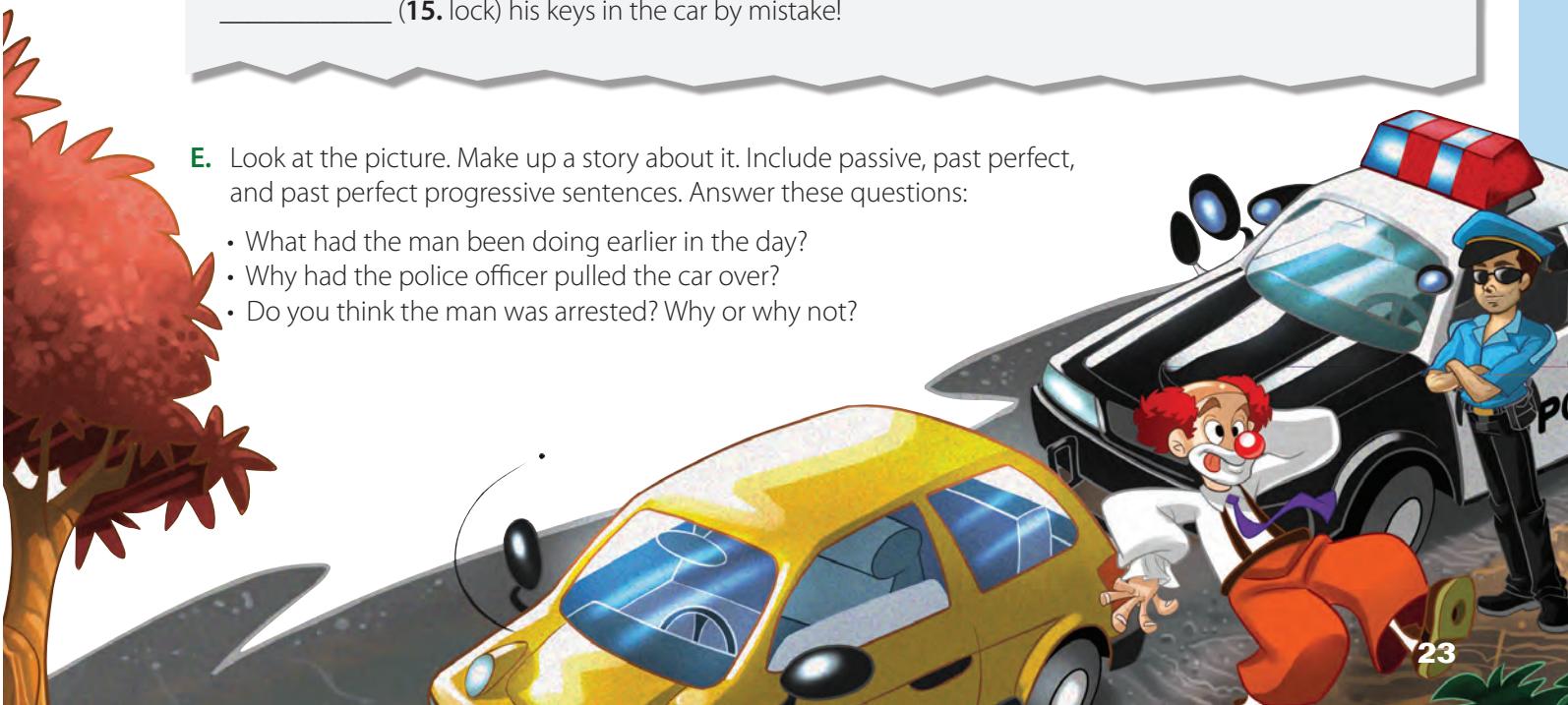
D. Complete the newspaper article with the correct form of the verbs. For some answers, both the simple past and the past perfect forms are possible.

Would-Be Robber Forgets Important Detail

STANTON, Texas—John Wilkinson, 24, _____ (1. attempt) to rob the Stanton Drug Store yesterday. Wilkinson _____ (2. spend) weeks planning every detail of the robbery. He _____ (3. buy) a ski mask to cover his face. And right before the robbery, he _____ (4. take) the license plate off his car. Wilkinson _____ (5. feel) confident that he _____ (6. plan) the perfect robbery. The robbery itself _____ (7. go) off without a hitch. The problems began when Wilkinson _____ (8. try) to get away. Wilkinson _____ (9. run) to his car. He _____ (10. leave) it parked and running in front of the pharmacy. He _____ (11. try) to get in the car but the door wouldn't open. Wilkinson _____ (12. discover) that he _____ (13. make) an incredibly stupid mistake. He _____ (14. think) so much about the robbery, that he _____ (15. lock) his keys in the car by mistake!

E. Look at the picture. Make up a story about it. Include passive, past perfect, and past perfect progressive sentences. Answer these questions:

- What had the man been doing earlier in the day?
- Why had the police officer pulled the car over?
- Do you think the man was arrested? Why or why not?



2 Crime Doesn't Pay

4 Conversation



Albert: When traveling in cities, I used to worry about being pickpocketed. Then I learned how pickpockets do it. That taught me how to prevent it from happening to me.

Ali: So how do they do it?

Albert: Well, to begin with, they look for someone on the street who has stopped to look at buildings or people. That's one of the reasons tourists are an **easy mark**.

Ali: Then what happens?

Albert: The pickpocket will often pretend to bump into the victim **by accident**. He might act as if he's dizzy. He may ask where you're from, act really friendly, and try to shake your hand.

Ali: Then what?

Albert: At this point, he might pretend to lose his balance and fall against you. Like this (*falling over*).

Ali: Then what?

Albert: That's it. You've **let your guard down**, and consequently, he's **nabbed** your wallet.

Ali: **Are you kidding? Come on.** My wallet couldn't possibly be stolen that easily.

Albert: Are you sure?

Ali: **I'm positive.**

Albert: Then what's this in my hand?

Ali: My wallet!



Real Talk

easy mark = likely victim(s)

by accident = not on purpose

let your guard down = not be careful enough

nabbed = stolen

Are you kidding? = Are you joking?

Come on. = Please be serious.

I'm positive. = I'm certain.

About the Conversation

1. What crime are the people talking about?
2. How does the crime happen? Explain the steps.
3. Have you or anyone you know ever been pickpocketed or robbed? What happened?

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Think about a process for doing something. Explain the steps in the process to your partner. Use the phrases for ordering from the box.

Ordering

To begin with...
Once...

At this point...
Consequently...

4 Conversation

- Focus students' attention on the photos. Ask:
What's happening to the person with the wallet?
Introduce the word *pickpocket* as a noun and a verb. *To pickpocket* means to steals things from another person's pockets (or other thing they carry with them, such as a purse or backpack). A *pickpocket* is someone who does this.
-  Play the audio twice. The first time, students listen with their books closed. The second time, they read along in their books.
- Ask questions to check comprehension. For example:
How do pickpockets choose their victims? (They look for people who are looking at buildings and other things. They often choose tourists.)
What do they do before they commit the crime? (They bump into their victim, or act very friendly and shake the victim's hand.)
What do you think Albert does when he says, Like this? (He acts out what the pickpocket does.)
Why is Ali surprised at the end of the conversation? (Albert has stolen his wallet from his pocket.)
- Have students practice the conversation with a partner. Then they switch roles and practice again.

Real Talk

- Model the phrases for the students to repeat.
- Ask students who says each phrase and why. Possible answers include:
 - easy mark** (Albert says this to describe the type of person it's easy to steal from.)
 - by accident** (Albert says this to explain that the pickpocket bumps into people and makes it look like it was not intentional.)
 - let your guard down** (Albert says this to describe a moment when the victim stops paying attention and isn't careful.)
 - nabbed** (Albert uses this slang expression to mean *stolen*.)
- Are you kidding?** (Ali says this because he doesn't believe that Albert's telling the truth. He thinks it's a joke.)
- Come on!** (Ali wants Albert to stop kidding or joking.)
- I'm positive.** (Ali says this to emphasize that he is very sure no one could steal his wallet that easily.)

- Have students practice these phrases by using them in sentences or situations with a partner.

About the Conversation

- Have students work in pairs and take turns asking and answering the questions.
- Check answers to questions 1 and 2 by calling on pairs to read a question and an answer.
- Discuss question 3 with the whole class. Ask several students to tell stories about times when they or people they know have been pickpocketed.

Answers

- They are talking about pickpocketing.
- Look for someone who isn't walking; pretend to bump into the victim by accident; shake victim's hand, act really friendly; take wallet and walk away.
- Answers will vary.

Your Turn

- Call on a student to read the directions aloud.
- Direct students' attention to the box. Tell them that these are some expressions people use when describing a process in order to put the steps in the right order. Ask: **Which expressions does Albert use in the conversation?** (to begin with, consequently)
- Brainstorm with students a few ideas that they might use for the conversation. Remind them that it doesn't have to be about crime. Some starter ideas might be things like these: *how to study for a test, how to learn new words, how to get your parents to say "yes."*
- Put students in pairs to create their conversations. Remind them to use the phrases from the box. Students should switch roles so each student gets a chance to explain something.
- Ask two or three pairs to present their conversations to the class. As they do this, have the class check off the phrases that they use to put the steps for their process in order.

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

5 Listening

- Focus students' attention on the photo. Ask: **What do you think the man is doing?** Elicit from students some things they do to stay safe from crime. Make notes of their answers on the board.
- Play the audio once for students to just listen. Play it again for them to write their answers.
- Play the audio a third time. Pause after each section to ask students to summarize what they heard, using the notes they wrote in the chart.
- Review the notes on the board. Which things were also mentioned in the lecture on safety?

Answers

- Things you can do to stay safe: Keep valuables out of sight. Travel with another person. Stay alert. Avoid unfamiliar locations. Take a self-defense class.
- You can recognize dangerous people or situations.
- Answers will vary.

Audioscript

Thanks for coming to our "Safety Tips" seminar today. This short class will give you important tips and tools for maintaining your personal safety.

One of the easiest and most important things you can do to prevent yourself from being mugged is to keep valuables out of sight. Expensive watches, rings, and necklaces make you an easy mark. They are like an invitation to a mugger. I recommend leaving these things at home to prevent them from being nabbed. However, if you must wear them, make sure that they are covered by your clothing until you arrive at your destination. I had been wearing an expensive watch earlier in the day. I took it off before leaving home.

Whenever possible, travel with at least one other person. When a person is walking down a street on their own, they are more likely to become a target.

Another extremely important and basic way of staying safe is to stay alert! Always remain aware of your surroundings and don't let your guard down. While I walked here today, I was taking constant, quick glances around. This gives you the chance to recognize people or situations around you that are potentially unsafe. If you feel unsafe, quickly walk to a well-populated area and, if necessary, get help.

Whenever you can, avoid unfamiliar locations. If you must travel through an area you aren't familiar with, become familiar with it. Before I came here today, I had never been to this part of town. So before I left my house, I mapped out the route to get here. I also made sure to find out the location of the local police station.

You might also consider taking a self-defense class. I took a self-defense class last year, and as a result, I feel more confident about my ability to protect myself. In fact, while I was taking the class, someone actually tried to mug me. I say "tried" because, thanks to the class, he didn't succeed!

6 Pronunciation

- Play the audio for the explanation while students read along in their books.
- Model the first sentence for the class, showing how the *s* from *tips* becomes the first sound of *seminar*.
- Play the rest of the audio for students to listen and repeat the sentences.

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Read the directions with the class. Have students read the list of words and the sentences. Then have students work individually to complete the sentences.

B

- Have students compare answers with a partner.

Answers

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. insured | 4. coincidence | 7. assume |
| 2. suspect | 5. installed | 8. display |
| 3. grim | 6. pavement | |

Workbook

Assign page 15 for additional reading practice.

Teaching Tip

Tell students that they shouldn't try to write a lot while listening. They should write only one or two words about important points. When the recording stops, they should complete their notes before they forget.

Additional Activity

Give a dictation. Play the audio of the last paragraph of the Listening. Pause the recording after each sentence and have students write as much as they can. Then put students in small groups to compare what they've written and add to or change their sentences. Play the audio again for students to check.

5 Listening



Listen to the lecture on safety. Take notes and then answer the questions.

1. Complete the chart.

Things you can do to stay safe	Tick <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> the things you do
	<input type="checkbox"/>

2. Why is it important to stay alert?
3. Which of these safety precautions do you already take? Will you start taking others?



6 Pronunciation



When a word ends with the same consonant sound that the next word begins with, the two sounds are linked. Listen and repeat the sentences. Practice linking the consonants.

1. Thanks for coming to our safety tips seminar.
2. This class will give you important tips.
3. To prevent yourself from being mugged, keep valuables out of sight.
4. Don't let your guard down.
5. I must travel to an unfamiliar area.

7 Vocabulary Building



- A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 26 and 27. Complete each sentence with one of these words.

assume
coincidence
display
grim
installed
insured
pavement
suspect

1. That watch is valuable. You should have it _____ in case it's ever stolen.
2. The police are looking for the _____. He has dark hair and was wearing a green shirt.
3. The news about the plane crash was _____. There were no survivors.
4. I was just thinking of Tom, when I bumped into him on the street. What a _____!
5. Alex had a new house alarm _____ to keep his home safe.
6. My brother fell on the _____ at the skateboard park and broke his wrist.
7. I _____ that I'm meeting her at the usual time. But maybe I'd better check.
8. The department store has a beautiful vacation _____ in their window.

- B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

8 Reading



Before Reading

What mystery or crime stories have you read? Talk about the characters and the story.



Crime Puzzles

The Case of the Stolen Jewels

Detective Colmes was at the coffee shop around the corner when he learned that Jones's Jewelry had been broken into. He arrived at the scene of the burglary in moments.

Mr. Jones, the owner of the store, explained what had happened. "I arrived this morning to open up the store. As I walked up to my shop, I noticed a lot of broken glass on the pavement. I looked up and realized that the display window had been broken." Colmes looked out the broken window at the sidewalk, littered with glass. Mr. Jones continued, "Then I saw that all of the jewelry from the display window was gone. The doors were still locked, so this must be where the burglar broke in!"

"Why didn't the alarm go off?" asked Colmes. "It's a strange coincidence," said Mr. Jones. "I removed our old alarm system yesterday and made an appointment to have a new one installed today."

Colmes looked around at the empty jewelry cases. "I assume your jewelry was insured?"

"Of course!" said Mr. Jones. "Thank goodness for that!"

Colmes nodded and said, "Mr. Jones, I believe there was a crime indeed. And it was committed by you."

What crime does Colmes suspect Mr. Jones of committing? Why?



The Case of the Bowling Alley Murder

The Center Street Bowling Alley, the oldest bowling alley in the city, closed at midnight. At 4:00 A.M., the janitor found a terrible sight: a man with a knife in his back lying in one of the lanes. Detective Colmes quickly arrived at the scene with a swarm of police officers.

"Anybody know the victim?" asked Colmes. "I do," said one of the officers. "That's Bob Reynolds. He's running for councilman. He and Mike Jenner have been having a bitter campaign battle."

"Perhaps we should pay Mr. Jenner a visit," said Colmes. Before leaving the bowling alley, Colmes took his cell phone out of his pocket and left it behind.

On arriving at Mike Jenner's house, Colmes told Jenner, "I have some grim news. Bob Reynolds has been murdered."

"No! I can't believe it!" cried Jenner.

"We'd like to speak with you about the murder. But first, I need to get back to the police station to file the report. Can you meet me at the station?"

"Of course. I'll help in any way I can."

"I'll give you a call." Colmes patted his pocket. "Uh oh, I must've left my cell phone at the bowling alley. Would you mind picking it up and bringing it with you to the station?"

Jenner looked confused, but said, "Sure. I'll do anything to help with the investigation."

Later that day, Jenner brought Colmes's cell phone to the station. He was arrested and charged with murder. Why?



8 Reading

- With books closed, discuss the **Before Reading** questions. Ask students about mystery or crime stories they have read or that they watch on TV. Who are their favorite detective characters?

READING STRATEGY Jigsaw reading

- Tell students that they are going to read a crime story. Put students in pairs and assign each pair one of the two crime stories on page 26. Tell them that they are going to read the story and then tell another pair about their story. (They should not read the other story.)
- In pairs, students read the story and then practice retelling the story in their own words.
- As students are working, go around the room and help as needed. Answer questions about the stories and give them some ideas about how they can retell this story.
- Have students work with a pair that read the other story. Each pair then tells their story to the other pair. (They should not tell them the explanation of the crime.) Students should ask questions about anything they don't understand. Remind them of the language for asking for clarification and confirming that they studied in Unit 1.
- When students finish telling the story, they ask the other pair to guess how the detective knew who had committed the crime.
-  When students have finished telling the stories, play the audio for the two stories. Have students read along as they listen.
- Invite one pair to tell each of the stories for the class. Have students ask questions about any details in the stories they still don't understand.

- As an extension, work with the vocabulary of the reading. Write these definitions on the board and have students find the words in the stories.

The Case of the Stolen Jewels

left lying in a mess all over a certain area

(paragraph 2: littered)

moved the head up and down to agree

(paragraph 5: nodded)

The Case of the Bowling Alley Murder

a large number of something (paragraph 1: a swarm)

full of angry, unhappy feelings (paragraph 2: bitter)

touch quickly with the flat part of the hand

(paragraph 8: pat)

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

After Reading

- Have students work individually to write *true* or *false* for each sentence. Have them rewrite the false sentences to be true. Then have them compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers by calling on students to read a sentence and say if it's true or false. Then have them refer to the part of the story that proves this.

Answers

- false (He was at the coffee shop.)
- false (The glass was outside on the sidewalk.)
- false (The story says it was the "oldest" bowling alley. This implies there are others.)
- false (They were having a bitter campaign battle.)
- true

9 Speaking

- Put students in small groups to discuss the questions. Give one student the role of reporter and say that this student will have to report what the group says about the characteristics of a good detective.
- Ask students to draw a similar organizer in their notebook. As students are working, go around and check that everyone is participating in the discussion, and writing their ideas in the organizer.
- Have the reporter from each group tell the class the characteristics the group thinks make a good detective. Do the members of the group think they would be good detectives? Why or why not?

Workbook

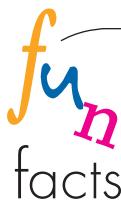
Assign pages 16-17 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level

Teaching Tip

When students are having a group discussion, try to make sure that each person in the group has something to do. For example, give each student a role to play, such as leader, reporter, or secretary. This helps ensure that everyone participates.

Additional Activity

Play the Alibi game. Write the word **Alibi** on the board and explain it. Tell students that a crime has been committed. Make it something silly, such as someone stole all the potato chips from the cafeteria. Give the time. Say that four students are suspects. Divide the class into five groups. Put all the suspects in one group. They have to agree on an alibi to explain why they couldn't have committed the crime at that time. The other groups are the police. They make up questions to ask the suspects. Then each one of the four suspects goes to a different group to be interviewed. The police groups compare answers. If the suspects' answers agree, they are innocent. If they give different answers, they're guilty.



One of the best-known crime writers in the world was Agatha Christie. She wrote 66 mystery novels. Her books have sold more than 2 billion copies around the world and have been translated into 45 languages.

Answer**The Case of the Stolen Jewels:**

Detective Colmes suspects that Mr. Jones took the jewelry himself and pretended that there had been a burglary so he could collect insurance money. The broken window is Colmes's clue. If someone had broken into the shop, the broken glass should have been on the inside of the shop. Since it was outside the store, the window must have been broken from inside.

Answer**The Case of the Bowling Alley Murder:**

Detective Colmes never told Mr. Jenner in which bowling alley the murder took place. Yet Mr. Jenner knew which bowling alley to go to for Colmes's phone. Mr. Jenner must have known where the murder took place because he was there!

After Reading

Answer **true** or **false**.

1. _____ Detective Colmes was at the police station when he heard about the robbery.
2. _____ The broken glass was inside the store.
3. _____ The Center Street Bowling Alley is the only bowling alley in the city.
4. _____ Mike Jenner was Bob Reynolds's friend.
5. _____ Colmes left his cell phone at the bowling alley on purpose.

9 Speaking



1. Talk about the characteristics of a good detective. Work in pairs or groups.
2. Write your ideas in the organizer below. Use the organizer to discuss in groups or in class.

Crimes that a detective investigates	Characteristics needed to solve crimes	Do I have these characteristics?

10 Writing



- A. Read the title of the article below and decide who it is addressed to. Give reasons for your answer.

CHARGING YOUR CELL PHONE, CAN GET YOU IN TROUBLE!

1. Read the article and answer the questions.
 - Why did the burglar leave the house in a hurry?
 - What did the police find?
 - How did they discover the identity of the burglar?
2. Read the article again and answer the questions.
 - How does it begin?
 - Are all the events presented in the order they happened (chronologically)? Why? Why not?
3. Find out which paragraph/s focus on:
 - the police investigation
 - the burglary
 - the arrest
4. How many past forms can you find?
5. Are there any passive forms? Why? Why not?



A burglar was arrested after leaving his cell phone at the house that he broke into. The man was going through the rooms, looking for valuables, when he heard someone unlock the door and enter the house. So, he jumped out of a window and fled to avoid getting caught.

The police searched the house later, looking for prints and other clues to help them identify the man. All of a sudden, one of the owners pointed to a cell phone plugged into one of the sockets, charging, and said that

he had never seen it before and did not know who it belonged to. The police checked with the rest of the family and confirmed that it did not belong to any of them.

One of the police officers had an idea. He called a contact listed in the phone memory, and told the person that the owner of the phone had been in an accident, so the police were trying to get in touch with friends and family. The man was identified. He was later arrested and charged with a total of 12 burglaries!

10 Writing

- Organize students into pairs. Direct their attention to the picture. Give them a few minutes to discuss what they see. Give students some questions to help them. For example: **Who do you think the person is? What is he doing in the picture? Where do you think he is? Why?**
- Have volunteers report answers/ideas for the class.

A

- Write the title CHARGING YOUR CELL PHONE, CAN GET YOU IN TROUBLE on the board and allow students to reflect and make suggestions on what the title is referring to. Elicit and discuss suggestions in class.
- Read the directions for 1 with the class and have students to try and predict what the article is about. For example:
Was the burglar arrested? How do you know? What makes you think that?
- Play the audio and have students listen and follow in the text. Were their predictions confirmed?
- Have students read the text individually to make notes then form groups to compare their notes. Circulate and monitor participation. Help when required.
- Call on students to report to the class. Ask them to give reasons for their answers.

Answers

- Because he heard someone enter the house and he didn't want to get arrested.
- They found a cell phone that did not belong to anyone in the family, plugged into a socket
- One of the police officers called a contact listed in the phone memory & the man was identified .
- Direct students to question 2 and have them work alone on their answer. Then ask them to compare with a partner.

Answers

- A burglar ...broke into.* It begins with the final event and the reason that led to it to raise reader interest and expectations.
- Have students work on 3 in pairs. Ask them to highlight words or phrases that they used as clues in the text.

Answers

Clues will vary.

- paragraph 2:** police, searched, prints, clues, identify the man
- paragraph 1:** arrested, broke into, looking for valuables
- paragraph 3:** police officers, idea, get in touch, identified, arrested and charged with 12 burglaries

- Have students read directions 4 and 5 and highlight relevant items.

Answers

- was arrested, broke into, was going through , heard, jumped, fled, searched, pointed, had never seen...etc., i.e. all the past forms in the text
- There are a few passive forms. For example: A burglar was arrested (paragraph 1) and the man was identified, was arrested/ charged. The passive forms are used to focus on the burglar and the burglary and not the person or people who acted, in this case the police, because it is understood that the police investigated the case and caught the burglar.

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

B

- Tell students that they are going to write a newspaper or web article about a foolish crime. Ask them to work in pairs to write a definition of a foolish crime. Call on pairs to tell the class what they wrote. Compare with other pairs.
- Read directions for 1 and 2 and organize students in pairs or small groups. Ask them to brainstorm on stories and talk about the components that are important, for example, the character/s, the location, the events, the reasons etc.
- Have students look at the pentagon and work on **Who**. Ask them to make notes using the lines over the pentagon. Circulate and monitor.
- Call on a student from each pair/group to report using their notes.
- Have students use the rest of the diagram to make notes on the location, events, reasons and time of events in the story. Circulate and monitor participation.
- After groups/pairs have made their notes around the pentagon read directions for 3 and 4.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Have students read the first point and discuss what kind of stories or openings to stories/articles make them want to read on.
- Call on volunteers to report their thoughts in class.
- Ask the class to reflect on the order used in the burglary story they read. Use questions like these:
Were events reported in the order they happened?

Are there a lot of details between events as they are reported?

- Read the next point in the writing corner about density. Explain that such articles are dense because a lot of information is packed within very limited space. Point out that having notes which outline the events and other information will help students write an article of this type.
- Encourage students to word process their articles in order to facilitate drafting and editing and save time.
- Organize students into pairs/groups. Ask them to write their first draft and exchange drafts in order to comment and make suggestions. Direct them to the model text but allow them to change the beginning of their article if they want.

- Have students read the comments and suggestions, edit and re-draft.
- You may wish to have one or two more editing stages here before asking students to write their final draft and post it to each other or mail it to each other if possible.
- Call on volunteers to answer in class.

Additional Activity

Regroup students and ask them to integrate their notes on the story and create a new story or series of silly crime stories.

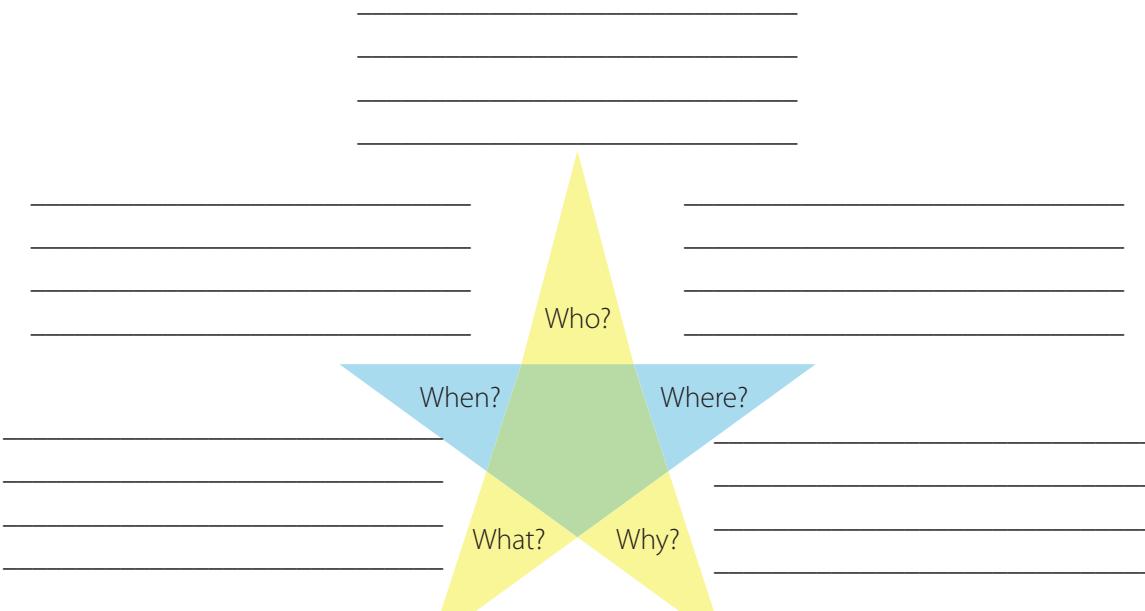
Teaching Tip

Encourage learners to focus on the content of their story/article. Explain to them that it is important to decide on what they are going to write and then on how they are going to write it. If they only focus on language, their story is going to be weak even if it is all grammatically correct and not very attractive to the reader.

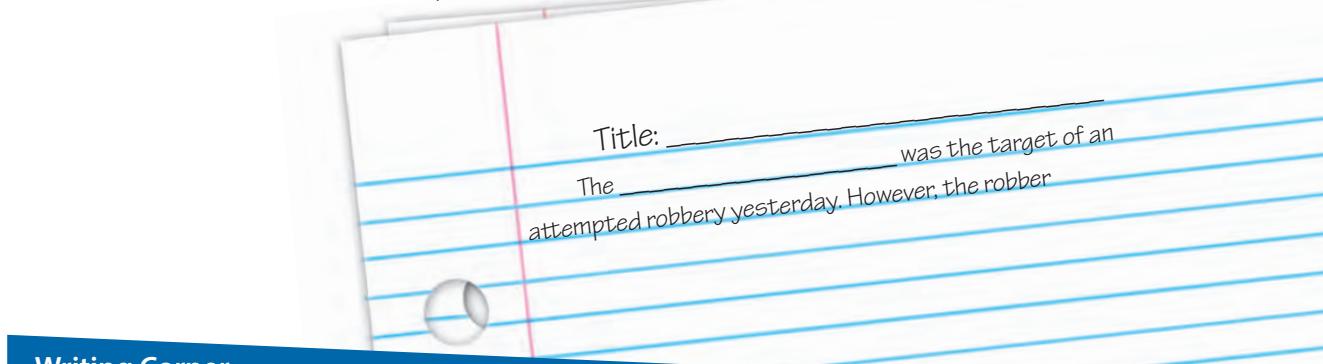
Workbook

Assign page 18 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

- B.** 1. Write a story for a newspaper or web article describing a crime. Choose a real or imagined crime. The crime should be a foolish, non-violent one.
2. Before you write, answer the five "Ws" about this crime: **Who**, **What**, **Where**, **When**, and **Why**. Use the pentagon chart to help you think and make notes around it.



3. Decide on a headline for your article.
4. Use your notes to write the first draft of the article.
5. Exchange and edit your drafts.
6. Re-write, check, and submit or post.



Writing Corner

When you write an article, a story for a newspaper or magazine:

- open with an account of an event that has happened recently; if a reader is attracted by the first few lines, they are more likely to read the whole story.
- notice that articles which provide the account of an event do not usually present things in natural order (chronologically); Use a variety of verb tenses to jump back and forth in past time: **What happened?** **What had happened?**; **What was going to happen** (but probably didn't?); **What has happened?**
- use time markers to help your reader follow the order of events in the narrative: **Before...**; **Later that day ...**; **Soon after...**; **When, While, and so on.**
- bear in mind that such articles are usually quite 'dense', i.e. they contain a lot of information in little space

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Simple Past Tense: Be

How **were** the burglars caught?

Was the pickpocket sorry for his crime?

There **were** security cameras everywhere.

Yes, he **was**. He apologized to the victim.

Simple Past Tense: Regular and Irregular Verbs

What **did** the police **do**?

Where **did** they **go** after they were arrested?

They **arrested** the criminal. They **didn't arrest** the man.

They **went** to police station. They **didn't go** to the police station.

Time Expressions for the Past

The armed robber stole a car **yesterday**.

The burglar went to jail **in 2006**.

Nathalie forgot to lock the door **last night**.

I went to Oman three years **ago**.

The Past with Used to and Would

We use *used to + be* to talk about past states that are no longer true:

Q: What **did** you **use to be** afraid of when you were younger?

A: I **used to be afraid** of elevators. I always took the stairs instead.

We use *used to + verb* and *would + verb* to talk about past habits that are no longer true:

Q: Did you **use to** travel a lot in your job?

A: Yes, I **used to (would) travel** to a new place every year. I **didn't use to like** it much and now I prefer to stay in one place.

- A.** Complete the conversation. Use the past tense of the verbs in parentheses. Then practice with a partner.

Fahd: What _____ (1.happen) to you yesterday?

Imad: I _____ (2. go) to the Falcon's football game and a pickpocket _____ (3. steal) my wallet.

Fahd: Oh no! _____ (4.do) you call the police?

Imad: Yes, and they _____ (5.catch) the thief!

Fahd: That's great! How _____ (6.do) they catch him?

Imad: There _____ (7.be) security cameras everywhere.



- B.** Work with a partner. Ask and answer about how Omar's life has changed. Use *used to* and *didn't use to*.

A: How often did Omar use to watch crime dramas on TV?

B: He used to watch crime dramas every day. He didn't use to do anything else!

1. Omar watched TV every day. Now he goes to the gym.
2. Omar ate a lot of junk food. Now he eats fruit instead.
3. Omar was overweight. Now he isn't.
4. Omar was always tired. Now he has more energy.
5. Omar didn't sleep well at night. Now he sleeps more soundly.



11 Form, Meaning and Function

Simple Past Tense: Be

- Direct students' attention to the first part of the grammar chart. Choose students to read aloud the questions and answers. Point out that we use the simple past of *be* to talk about a past situation rather than an action or an event.

Simple Past Tense: Regular and Irregular Verbs

- Direct students' attention to the examples in the presentation. Call on students to read aloud the *Wh*-questions and answers. Review the function of the simple past tense to describe things that happened and finished in the past, that is, completed actions.
- Point out that in questions the auxiliary *did* is used for all persons, singular or plural. Also point out that the inverted form of the question (the subject before the verb) follows the same pattern as questions with the auxiliary *do* in the simple present.
- As review, write regular and irregular at the top of two columns on the board. Ask students to tell you verbs that are regular in the past, and verbs that are irregular. If necessary, provide examples: *watch/watched* = regular; *go/went* = irregular.
- Ask: *How do we change a regular verb to talk about the past?* (add -ed) *What about verbs like study and cry that end in a consonant and y?* (The y changes to i, and we add -ed.)

Time Expressions for the Past

- Use the irregular verbs in sentences about what students do every day. Have students respond with sentences about **yesterday**. For example:
You: Ali rides his bike to school every day.
*Student: He rode his bike to school **yesterday**.*
- Tell students to write sentences about themselves using the simple past tense and time expressions. Then they should work with a partner to ask and answer and complete the sentences about their partners.
- Call on volunteers to read out their sentences for the class.

The Past with *Used to* and *Would*

- Write the following question on the board and ask students to answer it truthfully:
When you were younger, what were you afraid of?

- Share with the class a fear of your own and write it on the board. For example,
When I was younger, I was afraid of the dark.
- Call on volunteers to share their fears with the class and write them on the board under your own.
- Elicit or say that *used to be* describes a past state (or situation) which is no longer true. The auxiliary *didn't* (followed by use) is used in negative sentences. Point out that in questions the auxiliary *did* is used for all persons, singular or plural. The auxiliary *did* is also used in short answers to yes/no questions.
- Point out that we can substitute *used to* for would when we talk about past habits but not when we talk about past states.

A

- Have students work on this exercise alone and then compare their answers with a partner.
- Ask students to role-play the conversation in pairs.

Answers

1. happened 3. stole 5. caught 7. were
2. went 4. did 6. did

B

- Students should work in pairs and take it in turns to ask and answer about Omar's life.
- Call on a volunteer pair to demonstrate for the class.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers.

- A:** What did Omar use to do every day?
B: He used to (would) watch TV every day. He didn't use to go the gym.
- A:** What did Omar use to eat?
B: He used to (would) eat a lot of junk food. He didn't use to eat fruit.
- A:** What did Omar use to look like?
B: Omar used to be overweight. He didn't use to be slim.
- A:** How did Omar use to feel?
B: Omar used to always feel tired. He didn't use to have much energy.
- A:** How did Omar use to sleep?
B: Omar didn't use to sleep well. He used to be awake most of the night/ have insomnia

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

Past Progressive

- Go over the material in the presentation. Explain that we use the past progressive to talk about an action that started before a certain time in the past and was still in progress at that time.
- Elicit how the past progressive is formed: *was/were + the -ing form of the verb*.
- Have students say what they and their families were doing at a certain time in the past. First, talk about you and your family. For example, *Yesterday between 6 and 7 o'clock I was eating dinner. My brother was watching the news. My daughter was doing her homework.*
- Draw students' attention to the use of the past progressive with *always* to express irritation with a past, **repeated** activity.
- Ask a student to read out the next example and write it on the board: Put a circle around the word *when* and underline the past simple.
I was reading a crime novel when the power went out.
- Explain that we use *when* + simple past tense after the past progressive when we want to show that a short action happens in the middle of a longer action and may or may not interrupt it. Draw a timeline on the board to show this function.
- Explain that the clause with *when* can come first or last in the sentence. For example, both of the following sentences are correct: For example,
I was getting off the bus when the accident happened.
When the accident happened, I was getting off the bus.
- Call on a volunteer to read out the last example sentence in the presentation and write it on the board. Elicit that we use the past progressive with *while* to show two longer actions happening at the same time. Again, draw a timeline on the board to show this clearly.
- Point out that verbs to do with thinking and feeling are not normally used in the progressive form. For example: *like, agree, know, want, believe, and understand.*

C

- Ask students to read through the dialogue quickly and answer the question: *What crime does the policeman think John has committed?* (The policeman thinks that John robbed the Stanton Drug Store.)

- Tell students to work alone to complete the gaps and then compare their answers with a partner.
- Call on volunteers to role-play the conversation.

Answers

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. were/doing | 9. went |
| 2. was | 10. did (you) buy |
| 3. was buying | 11. was buying |
| 4. were (you) shopping | 12. did (you) take |
| 5. wasn't shopping | 13. did (you) say |
| 6. were parking | 14. weren't buying |
| 7. was parking | 15. Did (you) rob |
| 8. didn't go | |

D

- Have students work in pairs or groups of three to discuss John Wilkinson's possible guilt or innocence. Encourage them to refer back to the conversation when reporting their group opinion. For example, *We think that John Wilkinson is guilty as he says he didn't know why he was taking the license plate off his car. This seems very strange to us!*

Answers

Students' own answers.

Workbook

Assign pages 19-20 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.



Teaching Tip

When teaching grammar, always stress the functional aspect of a particular structure and not just its mechanical form.



Additional Activity

Have students work in small groups and tell about a real school event. They should tell what was happening when they arrived and what they did when they were there. The other students should try to guess the school event.

Past Progressive

We use the past progressive when we describe what was happening at a specific time in the past.

Q: What were you doing at three o'clock today? **A:** I was driving home from work.

We use the past progressive when we talk about a temporary state or action.

Q: Have you always lived in Riyadh? **A:** No. A few years ago, I **was living** in Dubai.

Q: What **were** you **doing** in Dubai? **A:** I **was working** at a hotel.

We use the past progressive with *always* to describe a repeated or annoying action.

My neighbor's son **was always getting** into trouble when he was younger.

We use the past progressive to describe a long action that is interrupted by a short action.

I **was working** on my computer when suddenly the power **went out**.

We use the past progressive to describe two actions that were happening at the same time.

While I **was studying**, my brother **was watching** TV.

C. Read the interview between the policeman and Mr. John Wilkinson. Complete the paragraphs with the simple past tense or the past progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

Policeman: What were you doing (1. do) at 3pm yesterday, Mr. Wilkinson?

John: I _____ (2. be) in the 'Supermarket.' I _____ (3. buy) milk.

Policeman: Who _____ you _____ (4. shop) with at that time?

John: I _____ (5. shop) with anyone. I was alone.

Policeman: At 3 pm, a security guard saw you outside the 'Ski and Snow' store. You
_____ (6. park) your car. Is that true, Mr. Wilkinson?

John: Oh yes, that's right. At 3 pm I _____ (7. park) my car. But I _____
(8. go) to the 'Ski and Snow' store to buy a ski mask. I _____ (9. go) to the
'Supermarket'...

Policeman: What _____ you _____ (10. buy) at the 'Supermarket'
Mr. Wilkinson?

John: I _____ (11. buy) some cheese.

Policeman: Why _____ you _____
(12. take) the license plate off your car when you
were parked next to the 'Snow and Ski' store, Mr.
Wilkinson?

John: Ermmmm... I don't know.

Policeman: Why _____ you _____
(13. say) that you _____ (14. buy) a
ski mask at the 'Snow and Ski' shop, Mr. Wilkinson?

John: Ermmmm... I..... didn't say that. Did I say that? I
meant

Policeman: _____ you _____ (15. rob) the Stanton Drug Store yesterday, Mr. Wilkinson?



D. With a partner, discuss if you think John Wilkson is guilty or innocent. Give some reasons why based on the interview in exercise **C**.

12 Project



- Choose and research one of the following topics:

Famous Crimes

Famous Frauds

Famous Blunders

- Work in pairs or groups. Collect information from different sources and make notes in your organizer.
- Use your notes to prepare a PowerPoint presentation or a poster.
 - Select photos/pictures or design/draw your own.
 - Plan what you are going to present and in what order.
 - Prepare your texts, e.g. bullet points, slogans, descriptions and/or accounts.
 - Share the work.
 - Collate your material and prepare.
- Rehearse and then present in class.

	<input type="checkbox"/> Crime	<input type="checkbox"/> Fraud	<input type="checkbox"/> Blunder
What was it about?			
Who was involved?			
Where did it take place?			
When did it happen?			
Why did it happen?			
How was it resolved?			

When you prepare a PowerPoint presentation, remember to:

Focus on your audience:

- what the audience knows or expects
- ways to keep them interested and engaged
- ways to entertain them, e.g. a joke, or a comment

Focus on your content:

- decide what you are going to talk about
- select and use key words/information
- illustrate with visuals or examples
- be prepared to say more than what is on your slides
- do not include too many points on each slide
- do not use a small font
- limit your points to about 4 or 5 maximum
- use bullet points, charts, or graphs
- use visuals
- reveal the information gradually
- include notes in the margin if you need a reminder of what you want to say
- do a trial run—practice using your material and software

Focus on your slides:



12 Project



- Direct students to task 1. Ask them to explain the meaning of ***frauds*** and ***blunders***.

Answers

Fraud: an act of deceiving someone for personal gain or to damage to another individual

Blunder: a bad mistake that is caused by carelessness

- Have students work in pairs or groups and choose the topic that they are going to research in 1. Call on a student from each group to report the topic that the group is going to focus on.
- Read 2 with the class and have students research, collect information and make notes. Allow them to add more details if they wish. Circulate and monitor to make sure that they are focusing on their chosen area and making notes.
- Ask students to read directions for task 3 and explain what they are required to do.
- Remind them to assign tasks to different members of the group in order to make the best use of time and resources. Point out that it would be better if they decided on some of the points as a group. For example, planning what they are going to present and in what order.
- If students have access to a library and/or the internet, you could aim to complete this and do the presentation on the same day. If not, they will have to organize themselves carefully to share tasks and do their research and data collection individually, then coordinate and present as a group.
- Before students start preparing their presentation material direct them to the points to remember. Write Focus on your audience, Focus on your content, Focus on slides.
- Have students listen to the points as you read and assign them to the appropriate heading/ category. Read one or two points at a time and ask students to categorize. Call on volunteers to report their ideas and decide in class. Encourage them to talk about each point and provide examples.
- Give groups time to organize themselves and share the tasks that need to be completed among members of the group. Let students work on their presentations.
- Circulate and monitor and/or help when necessary.

- If there is access to the internet in the classroom or in the library, encourage students to use it in order to access information, download pictures and design their slides.
- When the tasks have been completed, ask groups to coordinate all their work and work on the actual presentation both in terms of staging and materials. Circulate and make sure that students are following guidelines, for example limiting the points on each slide to a minimum of 5, using visuals as well as doing a trial run.
- Have groups present for the class on the same or a different day. Encourage them to involve as many members of their group as possible in the presentations.

Teaching Tip

Remind students to bear their audience in mind when they are in the process of preparing a presentation and while doing it. Explain, that there is always the temptation to include too much but what students need to keep remembering is how they feel when someone tries to give them a huge amount of information at once.

Additional Activity

Have students use a real event in the news or in history. Tell them that they are allowed to intersperse, delete or substitute words or information. They then read their modified text as naturally as possible for the rest of the students to spot the "defect" and stop them. If listeners spot 4 "defects" the presenters stop.

13 Self Reflection



- Brainstorm Crime Doesn't Pay. Write the title on the board and elicit as many ideas and words as possible from the class. List the words on the board.
- Have students scan pages 20 and 21. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked about this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:
Which headlines on page 20 did you find more intriguing? Why?
Which silly crimes do you remember? Which one was the silliest? Why?
- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 22, 23, ask them some questions. For example:
Choose a news item about an event?
Who was involved and/or affected?
Were the police contacted?
What has been found so far?
- Have volunteers answer the questions. Elicit more questions and answers from pairs of students after you give them a couple of minutes to think.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.
- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 24, 25. Call on volunteers to say what they remember from the Conversation. Elicit expressions from volunteers.
- Have students reflect on safety in pairs. Call on pairs to say which safety tip they remember from Listening.
- Have students make notes in the chart.
- Write *CrimePuzzles* on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember. Call on volunteers to list as much as possible on the board.
- Organize students in pairs and ask them to answer as quickly as they can to questions like these:
Was the case of the stolen jewels a fraud or a burglary? How do you know?
Did the second case involve a murder or an accident? How do you know?

● Have students reflect on the Speaking activity. **Which are the characteristics that make one a good detective? Can you name students who could be "good detectives"? What qualifies them?**

● Have students complete their Self Reflection charts as before about likes, dislikes and things they found easy or difficult.

● Before directing students to 10 Writing ask them to say what they remember about articles on crimes. Give them some time to work in pairs and then call on volunteers to answer.

● Have students scan pages 28 and 29 and make notes as before.

● Direct students to the 12 Project page and hold a discussion about what they found more or less useful and more or less interesting. Hold a class discussion about project work. Elicit ideas from the students and explain some of the benefits of this kind of work. List some aspect of project work on the board. For example:

Personalization

Creativity

Natural language use

Focus on meaning

Research/ collecting information

Using other knowledge

● Allow time for students to make notes on the project section individually. Then have them check with a partner.

● Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.

● Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions. Check to make sure that they have chosen the appropriate suggestion from the last column in order to deal with difficulties.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 2:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 2:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 2:

Unit 2 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
discuss crime and punishment			
read and discuss newspaper articles			
explain steps in a process			
use the passive			
use the past perfect and past perfect progressive			
use the simple past tense: <i>be</i>			
use regular and irregular verbs in the past			
use <i>used to</i> and <i>would</i>			
use the past simple versus past progressive			

My five favorite new words from Unit 2:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 2:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

3 Far and Away

1 Listen and Discuss



In pairs, tell each other five things you expect a hotel to have. Then read about these four unusual hotels. Share with each other how each hotel is different from what you expected.

"Certainly, travel is more than the seeing of sights; it is a change that goes on, deep and permanent, in the ideas of living."

—Miriam Beard Vagts

Jules' Undersea Lodge Florida, USA

Undoubtedly, most people have never been to a hotel like Jules' Undersea Lodge before. This extremely unusual hotel, located in Key Largo, Florida, is on the ocean floor! Guests scuba dive to the hotel's one unit, which is over 19 feet (six meters) below the surface. The unit includes two bedrooms, a television, and 50-inch (107-centimeter) circular windows that offer views of passing sea life.



Capsule hotels Throughout Japan

In recent years, capsule hotels have gained widespread popularity in Japan. Capsule hotels are hotels in which guests stay in a small sleeping space that is just big enough for a bed. There is so little room that some people can scarcely sit up in these capsules. However, in expensive cities, capsule hotels offer a relatively inexpensive alternative to more traditional hotels.

Ariaú Amazon Towers Hotel Manaus, Brazil

Ariaú Amazon Towers Hotel in Manaus, Brazil, is the world's largest commercial tree house. Amazingly, Ariaú's towers are built at the level of the rain forest treetops, about 72 feet (22 meters) in the air. The towers are linked together by four miles (six kilometers) of wooden catwalks. This very unusual setting gives guests the unique opportunity to experience the plant and animal life of the rain forest canopy while leaving the rain forest's ecosystem undisturbed.





Unit Goals

Vocabulary

Vacations
Travel
Ecotourism

Functions

Talk about travel experiences and travel dreams
Discuss hotels and services
Make and decline special requests

Grammar

Adverbs of Degree
Sentence Adverbs

Listening

Listen for specific details

Pronunciation

Stress on compound nouns

Reading

Ecotourism: See the World While Saving It

Writing

Write an informal letter

Form, Meaning and Function

The Future
Adjectives

Which hotel has rooms made of snow?

(The Kakslauttanen Hotel)

Which hotel do you have to scuba dive to get to?

(Jules' Undersea Lodge)

Which hotels are not very expensive?

(capsule hotels)

Play the audio for the four articles. Have students listen and read along in their books.

- Then have students work with a partner and take turns reading the paragraphs aloud.
- Have students tell their partner which hotel they would like to stay at and why. Ask a few students to report their partner's answer to the class. For example:
You: Where would (name) like to stay?
Student: (Name) would like to stay at...
- For additional vocabulary practice, write the following definitions on the board and have students find the words in the articles. You could also do this activity orally. For example, say: **Find a word in the article about Jules' Undersea Lodge that means round.**

Have students raise their hands when they find the word. After three or four students have raised their hands, call on one student to answer.

Jules' Undersea Lodge

round (circular)

Capsule Hotels

another choice or option (alternative)

Ariau Amazon Towers Hotel

connect (link)

the tops of the trees in a forest (canopy)

Kakslauttanen Hotel

comfortable and warm (cozy)

extremely beautiful (stunning)

Warm Up

Use the questions on page 34 as the Warm Up. With books closed, tell students about an interesting hotel you have been to. Then ask students to tell you about the most interesting hotels they have been to.

Ask students the question: **What are the five things you expect a hotel to have?** Have students tell a partner. Then discuss answers with the whole class.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Have students look at the pictures and skim the four articles. Ask a comprehension question and have students raise their hands as soon as they find the answer. When three or four students have raised their hands, call on one student to answer the question. This activity should move very quickly. Possible questions include:

Which hotel is a tree house?

(Ariau Amazon Towers Hotel)

Which hotels have very small rooms?

(capsule hotels)

3 Far and Away

Quick Check

A

- Have students read the whole paragraph. Tell them not to fill in the missing words at this time. Ask two or three comprehension questions. For example:
Where does the writer live?
(in a beautiful area of Panama)
What kind of hotel does the writer want to open?
(a small, friendly hotel)
How much would the writer charge for admission to the wildlife park? (The writer wouldn't charge any admission.)
- Have students work individually to complete the paragraph with words from the box. Tell them not to worry if they don't know some of the words. They should just make their best guess.
- Have students compare answers with a partner. If their answers are different or if they don't know a word, they should look it up in a dictionary.
- Check answers by calling on students to read the completed sentences aloud. Ask students to explain in their own words what each word means.

Answers

- widespread
- relatively
- undisturbed
- surface
- commercial
- ecosystem

B

- Have students work individually or with a partner to write *true* or *false* for each sentence. Have them rewrite the false sentences to be true. For each sentence, they should find the part of the article that supports their answer.
- Check answers by calling on students to read a sentence and say *true* or *false*. Then have them point out the part of the article that proves their answer.

Answers

- true
- false (Guests scuba dive to Jules' Undersea Lodge.)
- false (It has large, circular windows.)
- false (The Ariaú Amazon Towers Hotel gives guests the opportunity to explore the rainforest canopy.)
- true
- false (Guests leave the rainforest's ecosystem undisturbed.)

2 Pair Work

- Have students work with a partner to design their own hotel. Write a few questions on the board to guide them. For example:

Where is the hotel?

How large is it?

What attractions does it have?

What makes it unique?

- Have each pair present their hotel to the class.

Workbook

Assign page 21 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.



Teaching Tip

Try to recycle vocabulary from previous units as much as possible. Here's one idea. At the start of a class, write a word on the board from an earlier unit and then give a "prize" to the first student who manages to use the word in a natural way during the class.



Additional Activity

Give each student a postcard (or index card) with the name of a classmate on it. Have students imagine that they are staying at one of the places on these pages or in the hotel they designed in the Pair Work activity. Have them write a short note on the card to the classmate about their experience. When they have finished, have them "mail" the postcard by taking it to their classmate. Students then read the postcards they receive.

fun facts

For people who find a capsule hotel room a little bit too small, a man named Simon Woodroffe has come up with the idea of a Yotel. Each room is a small compartment or cabin similar to those on a train. Each cabin is about 10 square meters and has its own bathroom, a place to put luggage, and small fold-down desk. Of course, each room also has a TV. You can find Yotels at airports in London.

The Kakslauttanen Hotel

Lapland, Finland

In the heart of Finnish Lapland, 155 miles (250 kilometers) north of the Arctic Circle, lies a truly magical place. The Kakslauttanen Hotel offers guests the opportunity to stay overnight in either a snow or glass igloo. Those who choose the glass igloos can enjoy the night skies and the stunning Northern Lights from the comfort of their own bed. Luckily, the hotel provides cozy, extra-warm sleeping bags for the guests who choose to sleep in snow igloos!



Quick Check

A. Vocabulary. Complete the paragraph with words from the box.

commercial	relatively	undisturbed
ecosystem	surface	widespread

I live in a beautiful area of Panama that is very popular with tourists. In the last few years, there has been (1) _____ development of large, impersonal hotels. Lately, I've been thinking about opening a small, friendly hotel. It would be (2) _____ close to the center of town, but far enough away that the guests would be (3) _____ by the noise and traffic. I'd like my hotel to have a view of the water. There's nothing I like better than to watch the sun reflect off the (4) _____ of a lake. I'd also like to run a wildlife park close to the hotel. I wouldn't charge admission to the park because I don't think enjoying nature should be a (5) _____ activity. However, I'd limit the number of people who could enter the park each day, as too many visitors would disrupt the (6) _____.

B. Comprehension. Answer **true** or **false**.

1. _____ Capsule hotels are popular in Japan.
2. _____ Guests take a boat to Jules' Undersea Lodge.
3. _____ Jules' Undersea Lodge has small, square windows.
4. _____ The Kakslauttanen Hotel gives guests the opportunity to explore the rain forest canopy.
5. _____ Capsule hotels provide an inexpensive alternative to traditional hotels.
6. _____ Guests at the Ariau Amazon Towers Hotel have a negative effect on the rain forest's ecosystem.

2 Pair Work



You are going to design your own unusual hotel. List three to five things you would like your hotel to have. Then in pairs tell each other about your hotel.

3 Far and Away

3 Grammar



Adverbs of Degree

Adverbs of degree tell us about the intensity of a verb, adjective, or other adverb.

Some common adverbs of degree are:

absolutely	completely	hardly	quite	so
almost	enough	just	rather	too
barely	extremely	nearly	scarcely	very

Adverbs of degree usually go before the main verb they modify.

I've **almost** finished packing. I **nearly** missed my flight.

Adverbs of degree usually go before the adjective or adverb they modify.

The travel agent was **extremely** helpful. He read the map **very** carefully.

When *enough* is used as an adverb of degree, it is placed after adjectives and adverbs.

Is your coffee hot **enough**?

You are not speaking loudly **enough**.

Sentence Adverbs

Sentence adverbs modify an entire sentence, or a whole clause within a sentence.

They indicate the attitude of the speaker. Some common sentence adverbs are:

actually	certainly	frankly*	obviously	probably
admittedly*	clearly	honestly*	officially*	undoubtedly
apparently	evidently	naturally*	presumably	(un)fortunately*

(*) Some sentence adverbs usually go at the beginning of a sentence.

Frankly, I'm disappointed in the quality of this hotel.

Other sentence adverbs can go after the verb *be*, before simple tenses of other verbs, or after the auxiliary in a compound verb.

You are **obviously** having a good time.

He **certainly** spent a lot of money on this trip.

The flight has **undoubtedly** left by now.

A. Rewrite each sentence to include the adverb of degree.

 We have recovered from our trip. (almost) We have almost recovered from our trip.

1. We ate anything on the airplane. (hardly)
2. The food was bland for me. (too)
3. The flight attendant dropped my meal on me. (nearly)
4. Sleeping on the train was uncomfortable. (rather)
5. We were exhausted by the end of our trip. (absolutely)
6. The airplane seat wasn't big for me. (enough)

3 Grammar

Adverbs of Degree

- Read the explanation about adverbs of degree with the class. Have students look at the articles on pages 34 and 35 to find examples of adverbs of degree. (Some examples include: Jules' Undersea Lodge—*extremely* unusual hotel; Capsule Hotels—*just* big *enough* for a bed, people can *scarcely* sit up, offer a *relatively* inexpensive alternative)
- Write the following words on the board and have students find other words in the hotel descriptions with a similar meaning.
 - absolutely** (completely)
 - very** (extremely)
 - almost** (nearly)
 - barely** (hardly, scarcely)

Language Builder

Explain the difference between *too* and *very*. *Very* simply means extremely; *too* means more than is necessary or desirable. For example:

This hotel is very expensive, but we're going to stay there.
The hotel is too expensive. We can't stay there.

Sentence Adverbs

- Have students read the explanation and examples of sentence adverbs. Have students find examples in the articles on pages 34 and 35. (Some examples include: Jules' Undersea Lodge—*Undoubtedly*, most people have...; Ariau Amazon Towers—*Amazingly*, Ariau's towers are built...; The Kakslauttanen Hotel—*Luckily*, the hotel provides...)

A

- Have students close their books to focus attention on the board. Write the example sentence on the board: **We have recovered from our trip.** Tell students you want to add the word *almost* to the sentence. Elicit that it goes before the verb *recovered*. Point out that the adverb usually goes between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.
- Have students open their books and work individually to write the sentences. Then have them compare sentences with a partner.

- Check answers by calling on students to write their sentences on the board. Have the class check that the adverb is in the correct position.

Answers

1. We **hardly** ate anything on the airplane.
2. The food was **too** bland for me.
3. The flight attendant **nearly** dropped my meal on me.
4. Sleeping on the train was **rather** uncomfortable.
5. We were **absolutely** exhausted by the end of our trip.
6. The airplane seat wasn't big **enough** for me.

Language Builder

Explain that the words *scarcely*, *barely*, and *hardly* are negative words and can't be used with another negative. This is a common error, especially with *can/could + hardly*. For example:

It's very dark. I can hardly see. (NOT: I can't hardly see.)

- For additional practice, have students rewrite these sentences with *can + adverb*:
 - I can't hear you. (*barely*)
 (I can barely hear you.)
 - He couldn't eat anything. (*scarcely*)
 (He could scarcely eat anything.)
 - We couldn't sleep. (*hardly*)
 (We could hardly sleep.)
 - My feet are so cold, I can't feel my toes! (*hardly*)
 (My feet are so cold, I can hardly feel my toes!)
- Call on volunteers to write their sentences on the board.

3 Far and Away

B

- Have students look at the picture and read the paragraph. Tell them not to fill in any of the blanks at this point. Ask a few questions to check comprehension. For example:

What kind of hotel is this? (a cave hotel)

How old is it? (1,000 years old)

What was it before it was a hotel? (a prison and then an edifice)

- Have students work with a partner to complete the paragraph. If they don't agree on an answer, have them write both choices. Tell them that they should use each word at least once.
- Check answers by reading the paragraph aloud and calling on students to give their choices. When students give more than one answer, discuss whether both answers are possible.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- Indeed
- probably
- actually
- However
- Surprisingly
- Interestingly
- presumably
- obviously

C

- Have students look at the pictures and read the information about the Ice Hotel in Sweden. Ask: **Why do you think people would want to stay in this hotel? Would you like to stay there? What happens to the hotel every spring?** (It melts into the river.)
- Have students work individually to write paragraphs using the information given. Tell them to try to use at least two adverbs of degree and two sentence adverbs in their paragraph.
- Have students read their paragraphs aloud to a partner. The partner should listen for the adverbs and note which ones the student used.

Workbook

Assign pages 22–24 for practice with the grammar of the unit.



Teaching Tip

When a student asks a question in class, try to elicit the answer from other students before providing the answer yourself. Involve the class in the discussion. In this way, everyone will benefit from the student's question. Otherwise, students will tend to "tune out" while you are answering the question, thinking it has nothing to do with them.



Additional Activity

Have students write two or three sentences about a travel experience. One of the sentences should begin with a sentence adverb. For example: *My family and I went to a beach resort last year. Unfortunately, it rained every day while we were there.* Have students read their sentences to the class. Have the class listen to the sentences and make a list of all of the sentence adverbs that they hear.

fun facts

Even if you can't scuba dive, you may be able to stay in an underwater hotel. The Hydropolis is a hotel being built off the coast of Dubai. Guests will travel to the hotel by train through an underwater tunnel. There will be 220 bubble-shaped guest rooms with walls of clear glass. Of course, it will be a little expensive—\$5,500 a night!

- B.** Complete the paragraph with the sentence adverbs from the box.
Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

actually indeed obviously probably
however interestingly presumably surprisingly



Staying in the Gamirasu Cave Hotel in Cappadocia, Turkey, is an amazing experience. (1) _____ it is (2) _____ one of the most unique hotels in the world. This 18-room cave hotel is (3) _____ located in a restored thousand-year-old edifice. It was also once used as a prison. (4) _____ it is not the least bit uncomfortable. (5) _____, it has all the comforts and conveniences you would expect in a modern hotel. (6) _____, the cave is heated by solar panels and electricity comes from water power.

Many people come to the hotel for their vacation. They are (7) _____ drawn to the hotel for its secrecy and beauty. The hotel is surrounded by breathtaking views and there are (8) _____ many great opportunities for cave exploring!

- C.** Read about the hotel. Then write a paragraph about it, using adverbs of degree and sentence adverbs.

- The hotel is located on the Torne River, 124 miles (200 kilometers) north of the Arctic Circle.
- The hotel is the biggest igloo in the world.
- It melts into the river every spring and is recreated every winter.
- The temperature inside the hotel is 23° Fahrenheit (-5° Celsius).



ICEHOTEL,
Sweden

3 Far and Away

4 Conversation



Attendant: Flight C458 is ready for takeoff. Please ensure your seatbelts are fastened and your seats are in the upright position.

Passenger: Excuse me?

Attendant: Yes? Can I get something for you?

Passenger: No, but I wonder if I can ask you a question?

Attendant: Certainly.

Passenger: I see that there's an empty row near the front of the plane. I was wondering if it would be possible to change seats. I usually try to get some sleep during **red eye** flights, and it would be much easier if I could spread out.

Attendant: Unfortunately, that won't be possible. It's against our policy for passengers to leave their assigned seats on this airline.

Passenger: Well, that's a **crummy** policy. I **don't get it**. Other airlines allow it. Why should passengers be crammed together when there are open seats on the flight?

Attendant: Please try to understand. The problem is that if we gave you the seat, it wouldn't be fair to other passengers who might also want the open seat.

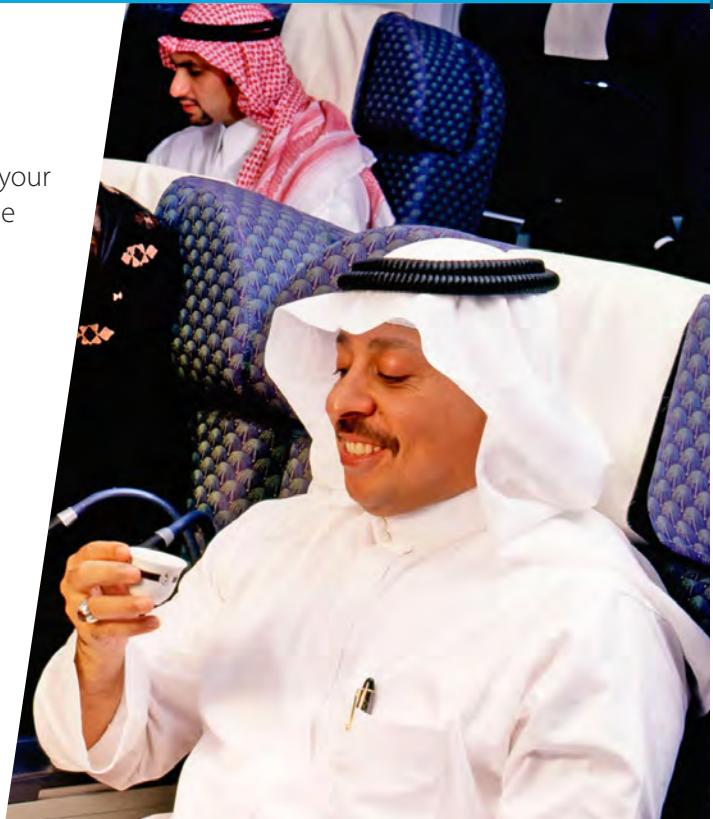
Passenger: That's a **drag**. Especially since I requested a window seat at the front of the plane, and they put me on the aisle near the back!

Attendant: Could I see your ticket please?

Passenger: Sure, why?

Attendant: Sir, the empty window seat at the front of the plane *is* your seat! Your seat is number 3, not 33.

Passenger: Oh! **Awesome!**



Real Talk

red eye = overnight

crummy = bad

don't get it = don't understand

a drag = a disappointment

Awesomel = Terrific!

About the Conversation

1. What request does the passenger make?
2. How does the flight attendant respond? What reasons does he give?
3. How does the passenger end up getting what he wants?

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are at a shopping mall, making a special request of the sales clerk or assistant. Use phrases for making and declining special requests.

Making and Declining Special Requests

I wonder if it would be possible...

That won't be possible...

Do you think it would be possible...?

I'm afraid (we) can't...

Unfortunately, that's not possible...

We can't do it because...

I wish it were possible, but...

The problem is...

4 Conversation

- With students' books closed, ask the class about their experiences with airplane travel. For example, ask:
What do you do when you board a plane? Do you have to sit in your assigned seat? Where do you like to sit—by a window or on the aisle?
-  Play the audio twice. The first time students listen with their books closed. The second time, they read along in their books.
- Have students practice the conversation with a partner. Then they switch roles and practice again.
- Ask students questions to elicit their opinions about the situation. For example:

What is your opinion of the man's request?

Was it OK to ask for the seat change?

What do you think of the airline policy?

Elicit student's ideas. You might also ask if students have seen other examples of airline passengers having problems with seating.

About the Conversation

- Have students work with a partner to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by calling on students to read the questions and answer them .

Answers

- He would like to change seats.
- He says that changing seats won't be possible because it wouldn't be fair to other passengers. It's also against the policy of the airline.
- The passenger was in the wrong seat to begin with. He moves to his assigned seat, which is the one that he wanted.

Real Talk

- Model the phrases for the students to repeat.
- Ask questions about the phrases. For example:

Why do you think that overnight flights are called red-eye flights? (because overnight travelers are usually very tired and have red eyes)

Are the expressions crummy and a drag formal or informal expressions? (They are informal. *Crummy* especially is not very polite and should be used with care.)

What doesn't the passenger get? (He doesn't know why he can't sit in the open seat.)

Why does the passenger say Awesome! at the end of the conversation? (He's happy that he will get the seat he wanted.)

Your Turn

- Call on a volunteer to read the directions aloud.
- Direct students' attention to the box with the expressions for *Making and Declining Special Requests*. Point out that using phrases like these makes the request sound more polite.
- Have students find examples of the phrases in the Conversation. (Some examples include: Passenger: *I wonder if I can ask...; I was wondering if it would be possible...;* Attendant: *Unfortunately, that won't be possible...; The problem is...*)
- Brainstorm a few ideas with the class for special requests you might make at a shopping mall, for example: asking for a specific item, or brand, or asking for extended guarantee.
- Put students in pairs to create and role-play the conversation. Remind them to use the phrases for making and declining requests. As students are working, go around the room and offer help as necessary.
- Have one or two pairs act out their conversations for the class.

5 Listening

- Ask students if they've ever gone on a backpacking trip. Then have students look at the list of items. If several students in the class have gone on backpacking trips, ask: **Which of these things did you take on your trip?** If not, ask: **What would you take on a backpacking trip?**
- Play the audio. Tell students to listen but not to write their answers at this time.
- Play the audio again for students to check the items the speaker recommends bringing.
- Play the audio a third time for students to check their answers.

Answers

The following items should be checked: rain jacket, toiletries, trash bags, water bottle, 2-3 bandages, tweezers, sunglasses, and guide book.

Audioscript

The most important rule of thumb when packing a backpack is to pack light! You may think it's a good idea now to pack that pair of expensive boots and your smartphone. But later you will undoubtedly find yourself wishing you hadn't brought these things. One common backpacking tip is to pack everything you think you need...and then take out half of what you've packed! In addition to items you obviously must bring like toiletries and a few changes of clothing, don't forget to pack essential items such as a light rain jacket, a fast-drying towel, and some first aid equipment. It's important to pack some bandages. However, just pack two or three bandages—not a whole box! Tweezers also come in handy for everything from removing ticks to taking out splinters. It's also a very good idea to throw a couple of trash bags in your backpack for dirty laundry, wet items, or garbage. Aside from what you should pack, it's also quite important to consider where you should pack each item. Nothing is quite so frustrating as having to dig through your backpack to retrieve an item that is buried at the very bottom. Keep items which you will need to access often, such as your sunglasses, your water bottle, and your guide book in an easily accessible front compartment. And one final thought: You know that expensive watch your parents bought you for graduation? Leave it home. The same thing goes for all expensive jewelry and equipment. Unfortunately, things have a way of getting lost, stolen, or broken when you're backpacking. So only take items you won't be horrified or heartbroken to lose.

6 Pronunciation

A

- Play the audio of the explanation as students read along in their books.

- Have students work with a partner and practice saying the sentences.

Play the audio of the sentences for students to check their pronunciation. Then play it again and have students repeat or speak along with the recording.

B

- Have students work individually to find compound nouns. After several minutes put students in groups to practice reading them aloud.

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Have students work individually to match the words with the definitions.

B

- Have students compare answers with a partner. When their answers are different or they don't know a word, they should look it up in a dictionary.

Answers

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. i | 4. c | 7. h |
| 2. f | 5. a | 8. g |
| 3. e | 6. b | 9. d |

Workbook

Assign page 25 for additional reading practice.



Teaching Tip

There will be times when even the most carefully planned lesson doesn't work for one reason or another. It's a good idea to have some ideas for what you will do if a plan doesn't work out.



Additional Activity

Choose one of the longer words from this unit, such as **deforestation** or **characteristics**, and write it on the board. Have students work with a partner to write as many words of three or more letters as they can, using the letters of this word. Give them a time limit of three minutes. When time is up, choose a pair to read their list. If other students have the same words, they cross them out. Then ask other pairs to say more words. The pair with most unique words wins.

f
u
n
facts

One maker of hiking equipment recommends that a packed backpack should not weigh more than one quarter of the person's body weight. It's also a good idea to put lighter items at the bottom of the pack and heavier ones on top.

5 Listening



Listen to the experienced traveler talk about what to pack for a backpacking trip through Europe. Tick the items he recommends bringing.

rain jacket	<input type="checkbox"/>	smartphone	<input type="checkbox"/>
expensive boots	<input type="checkbox"/>	sunglasses	<input type="checkbox"/>
toiletries	<input type="checkbox"/>	box of bandages	<input type="checkbox"/>
trash bags	<input type="checkbox"/>	tweezers	<input type="checkbox"/>
water bottle	<input type="checkbox"/>	expensive jewelry	<input type="checkbox"/>
2–3 bandages	<input type="checkbox"/>	guide book	<input type="checkbox"/>



6 Pronunciation



A. Words like **backpack** and **water bottle** are called compound nouns because they are made up of two separate nouns. The stress goes on the first part of the compound noun. Say each sentence. Then listen to see if you stressed the compound nouns correctly.

1. Throw a couple of **trash bags** in your **backpack** for dirty laundry.
2. Keep your **sunglasses** and **water bottle** in an easily-accessible front compartment.
3. Some people like to bring a **notebook** or journal to write about their travels.
4. You packed everything except your **toothpaste** and **toothbrush**.
5. I'll look for a **postcard** in my **mailbox** every day!

B. Find compound nouns in the passages about hotels and in the conversation you read. Underline and practice reading them aloud. Remember to stress the first part.

7 Vocabulary Building



A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 40 and 41.

Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. _____ pristine | a. the action of cutting down trees to clear forests |
| 2. _____ preserve | b. distinguishing traits or qualities |
| 3. _____ conservation | c. something that causes a person to act |
| 4. _____ incentive | d. abundantly green, fertile |
| 5. _____ deforestation | e. careful protection of something |
| 6. _____ characteristics | f. to keep safe from injury, harm, or destruction |
| 7. _____ remote | g. lessening, diminishing |
| 8. _____ reduction | h. geographically isolated |
| 9. _____ lush | i. not spoiled |

B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

8 Reading



Before Reading

1. **Eco-** means “related to the earth or environment.” What do you think **ecotourism** means?
2. Read the passage and underline all the words and phrases that can help you understand what ecotourism means.

Ecotourism: See the World While Saving It



Imagine vacationing in a place of stunning, natural beauty. Picture yourself relaxing on a pristine beach in Belize, exploring the desert on a camel in Dubai, or following lions and zebras in Kenya. Now imagine that while enjoying these experiences, you are also helping to preserve the environment, protect wildlife, and support local communities. Sound too good to be true? It isn't! Such vacations are part of the fastest growing trend in the travel industry. The trend is called ecotourism.

While ecotourism was almost unheard of before the 1990s, it has quickly become a multi-billion dollar industry. But what exactly *is* ecotourism? These are some of its characteristics:

- It involves travel to natural, often remote, destinations. These are often protected areas where development is limited.
- Ecotourism destinations focus on recycling, water conservation, and using renewable energy sources.
- It builds environmental awareness. As visitors explore an area, they also learn about it.
- It provides an economic incentive to preserve the environment and raises money to help protect it.
- It creates financial opportunities and jobs for the local population.

Costa Rica was one of the first ecotourism success stories. At one time, Costa Rica had the highest rate of deforestation in all of Latin America. However, since ecotourism, there has been a dramatic reduction in deforestation. Now, more than a quarter of Costa Rica's land is protected from development. Costa Rica is now the world's top ecotourism destination. Amazingly, this small country of four million people has about 1.5 million visitors per year.

Stacy Davison is one of the million-plus tourists who chose to visit Costa Rica this year. “We wanted to explore a country that was largely unspoiled by development. And, boy, did we get what we were looking for. We saw beautiful beaches, lush rain forest, and exotic wildlife.” Stacy is especially enthusiastic about a wildlife refuge she and her husband visited during their trip. “Getting there took four hours by bus along an unpaved road. But it was so beautiful that it was worth it. We hiked the trails and took a tour through the rain forest canopy. Our guide showed us how to poke a stick into a termite nest to get a snack (They have a nutty flavor!), and how to use live leaf-cutter ants to create stitches for a cut. It was quite an amazing experience!”

8 Reading

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the **Before Reading** question. Write the word **Ecotourism** on the board and underline Eco. Ask: **What does Eco- mean?** (related to the earth or the environment) Then elicit students' ideas about the meaning of ecotourism.
- Focus students' attention on the pictures and the title. Ask: **What do you think the main idea of the article is going to be?** Elicit students' responses and make notes on the board, but don't indicate if any answers are right or wrong at this point.
-  Play the audio. Have students listen and read along in their books.
- Review the notes on the board. Which of the students' ideas best describes the main idea?

READING STRATEGY Summarizing

- Read aloud the first paragraph again as the class listens. Then ask students to close their books and tell you in their own words what the paragraph is about. (Responses should include the idea that it's about taking vacations in beautiful places and helping the environment at the same time. This is called *ecotourism*.)
- Put students in pairs and tell them to take turns reading the paragraphs in the article and summarizing them. One student reads a paragraph while the other listens. Then that student closes the book and summarizes what he or she has just read. Then the other student reads the next paragraph and summarizes, and so on. Point out that students don't need to repeat everything they read, just the main ideas.
- When students have finished, ask if they have any questions about the article. Discuss these with the whole class.
- As an extension, you may want to do additional work with the new vocabulary in the article. Have students look at the words in Vocabulary Building on page 40. Have them find and underline the words in the article.
- Discuss with students what each word means in the context of the article. For example, ask: **What is a pristine beach?** (It's a beach in its natural state. There aren't a lot of hotels or restaurants. It's clean and without a lot of garbage.)

- The following are some phrases and possible responses for other words. (The symbol ~ represents the word.)
 - preserve** (~ the environment = protect the plants, animals, water and land)
 - conservation** (water ~ = saving water; keeping it clean)
 - incentive** (economic ~ = possibility of earning money while doing something)
 - deforestation** (highest rate of ~ = Costa Rica was cutting down more trees than any other country)
 - characteristics** (some of its ~ = some of ecotourism's features; things that are special about it)
 - remote** (~ destinations = places that are far away and difficult to get to)
 - reduction** (a dramatic ~ in deforestation = cutting down many fewer trees than in the past)
 - lush** (~ rainforest = forest full of green trees and many other plants)

3 Far and Away

After Reading

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Tell them to look back at the article as necessary to find the words.
- Check answers by calling on students to read their sentences.

Answers

- ecotourism
- Costa Rica
- deforestation
- a quarter
- wind, solar power

Teaching Tip

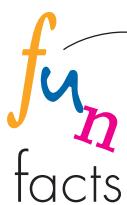
Explain why you're asking students to do certain activities. This is especially important with older and more advanced students. For example, explain that discussing the meaning of vocabulary words in relation to the context helps them get a better understanding of the words. It also makes it more likely that they will remember the words.

Additional Activity

Have students find pictures of different kinds of travel destinations and bring them to class. In small groups, have students describe the pictures to their classmates. What are characteristics of each place?

9 Speaking

- Have students work in pairs or groups based on the questions. Have students ask the questions and call on classmates to answer. They should elicit answers from as many classmates as possible.
- Have students work in groups to list names of places in their country that are good for ecotourism and the activities that are offered there. After several minutes have students present their list to the class.



Another kind of vacation travel that is becoming more popular is "voluntourism." This means that a person takes vacation time to travel and work as a volunteer for a local project. The travel company Condé Nast did a survey and found that 55 percent of the people it asked would be interested in this kind of vacation.

Workbook

Assign pages 26-27 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Stacy also enjoyed knowing that the money she was spending on her vacation was being used in environmentally responsible ways. She stayed in locally-owned, environmentally-friendly hotels that grow their own fruits and vegetables, and use renewable sources of energy such as wind and solar power.

Undoubtedly, ecotourism plays a critical role in preserving the land in Costa Rica as well as in other ecotourism destinations around the globe. At the same time, ecotourism provides visitors with a unique, unforgettable, and educational vacation. Basically, ecotourism is a win-win situation for both the tourists and the countries they visit.



After Reading

Complete the sentences.

1. _____ is the fastest growing trend in the travel industry.
2. _____ is the world's top ecotourism destination.
3. At one time, Costa Rica had the highest rate of _____ in Latin America.
4. More than _____ of Costa Rica's land is protected from development.
5. Two examples of renewable energy sources are _____ and _____.

9 Speaking



1. Work in pairs or groups. Think about the characteristics and benefits of ecotourism and make notes in the chart. Then list the names of places in your country that are good for ecotourism and the activities that are offered there.
2. Use your notes to discuss your ideas in class.

	Characteristics/benefits of ecotourism	Places in my country for ecotourism
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		

10 Writing



A. Decide on three places you would like to visit and say why you would like to visit them.

1. Read the article and find out the following:

- Which place would the writer like to visit?
- Why would he/she like to visit the place?
- What would he/she like to do there?
- Would you choose to go there?

2. Read the article again and answer the questions.

- How does it begin?
- Are there paragraphs that provide only factual information?
- Are there paragraphs that provide only personal views?
- Are there paragraphs that combine factual information and personal views?

3. What is your view as a reader?

- Is there sufficient information about the place?
- Does it answer your questions about the place?
- Is the writer convincing about their feelings and views? Why? Why not?

4. Which verb forms and tenses does the writer mostly use?

5. Are there any passive forms? Why? Why not?



Galapagos

Ever since I saw a documentary about the land iguana and other strange creatures in the Galapagos, I have wanted to visit these isolated islands in the Pacific Ocean. The breathtaking landscapes and unusual animal life have drawn scientists, researchers, and conservationists to the islands for decades, but ecotourism has now made them a favorite destination for a lot of people.

The islands were formed by volcanic processes. There is still volcanic activity in the western part of the area as well as regular earthquakes. Due to the widely varied natural conditions, such as water temperatures that range from warm to moderately cool, as well as unique geological features, there is a significant diversity of marine and land species.

Diving, trekking, and hiking would be the most appealing way of seeing the islands and its inhabitants. I often dream of encountering the Galapagos giant tortoise and iguanas in their natural habitat.

Some researchers, who have chosen to make the Galapagos their home, have developed such a strong bond with the islands that they cannot tear themselves away for more than a couple of months at a time.

I might have been influenced by the enthusiastic accounts of dedicated conservationists or impressed by the unique images; the fact still remains, however, that a trip to the Galapagos is a life's dream that will hopefully come true some day.

10 Writing

A

- Direct students' attention to the picture and the title. Give them a few minutes to discuss what they see in pairs. Ask them if they have heard of the Galapagos before.
- Elicit three places that students would like to visit from the class and write their names on the board. Have students who know some things about them tell the class.
- Organize students in pairs or small groups. Read the directions for 1 and ask students to follow in their books as you play the audio. Allow them to discuss the answers with their partner.
- Call on students to report their answers for the class. Ask them to provide reasons or clues in the text for their answers.

Answers

- The writer would like to visit the Galapagos islands.
- He would like to visit the islands to experience their beauty and see the diverse marine and land species. Overall, he would like to have the opportunity to visit a unique place in the world.
- He would like to go diving, trekking and hiking and see marine and land species in their natural habitat.
- Read directions for 2 with the class. Ask students to read the article and work individually to find the answers. Circulate and monitor.
- Have students compare answers with their partners. Call on volunteers to report answers for the class.

Answers

- It begins with: "Ever since I saw a documentary ..." Explain that it is not always necessary to begin with the main topic, in this case the Galapagos. Tell students that they can approach a subject /topic through impressions, feelings or memories. Elicit examples from the class.
- **Paragraphs 2 and 3** provide only factual information.
- **Paragraph 5** provides personal views
- **Paragraphs 1 and 4** provide factual information and personal views.
- Have volunteers report answers/ideas for the class. List the ideas on the board. Elicit reasons for the answers.

- Read directions for task 3 with the class. Have students answer the questions individually.
- Call on students to express their ideas. Encourage them to provide reasons for their answers.
- Go through questions 4 and 5 with the class and ask them to highlight all verb forms they encounter. Then say which are used more.

Answers

- Present Perfect
- There are some passive forms to refer to the islands in the past. E.g. Paragraph 2: The islands were formed by volcanic processes.

Additional Activity

Ask students to think of their dream place and write a brief starting paragraph about it, using paragraph 1 as a model. For example:

Ever since I read an article about / saw a documentary about / etc.

Tell them not to include the name of the place. Collect papers and hand them out to different students to read and try to guess which place is being referred to.

3 Far and Away

B

- Elicit the names of places that students want to visit and write them on the board. Ask students to choose and team up with other students who have chosen the same place.
- Organize students in small groups or pairs depending on the places they want to visit. If you have done the Additional Activity, use the places mentioned in the opening paragraphs.
- Direct students to B on page 43 and tell them that they are going to write a letter to a friend telling them about the place they plan to visit. Tell them they will describe the place and their feelings about going there.
- Read directions for 1 and 2 with the class.
- Give the groups/pairs some time to discuss information that they already have about each place. Encourage them to share information and make notes in the organizer.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Ask them to think about letters from friends and family they have received and what they liked about them. For example, a friendly, personal tone. Have students think about the content of letters and how they are organized. Stress the importance of planning what they want to tell their friend about the place they plan to visit.
- Read the guidelines in the Writing Corner with the class. Pause and discuss each point.

Brainstorm: Tell students to think about what they know or what they have seen about the place and share it with the rest of their group or their partner.

Research: Research is often necessary not only to collect new information but also to confirm existing information. Ask learners to assign research tasks to members of their group.

Reasons for liking a place: There are usually special reasons that attract us to a place or make us like one place over another. We don't normally reflect on this carefully enough to be able to express all the reasons that might have to do with facts, feelings or ideas.

Feelings: Certain facts, experiences, images evoke/cause specific feelings for each one of us. However, if we don't have to speak about them we don't really bother to put them into words. In this case it is important to think about them and express them for other people to hear and/or read.

Plan: Plan the information you are going to include in each paragraph.

- Have students think about the content and plan their letters. Refer students to the model on page 35 to help guide them toward appropriate organization.
- Give them time to write their letters. Tell them to feel free to modify the group letter if they want.
- Have students exchange drafts and make comments or suggestions. Encourage them to read more drafts if there is enough time. Ask them to use the comments and rewrite their essays. Call on volunteers to read their letters aloud in class.

Workbook

Assign page 28 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

B. Write a letter to your friend telling them about a place you plan to visit. Describe the place and how you feel about going there. Choose a place or experience of your own or choose from the ideas below:

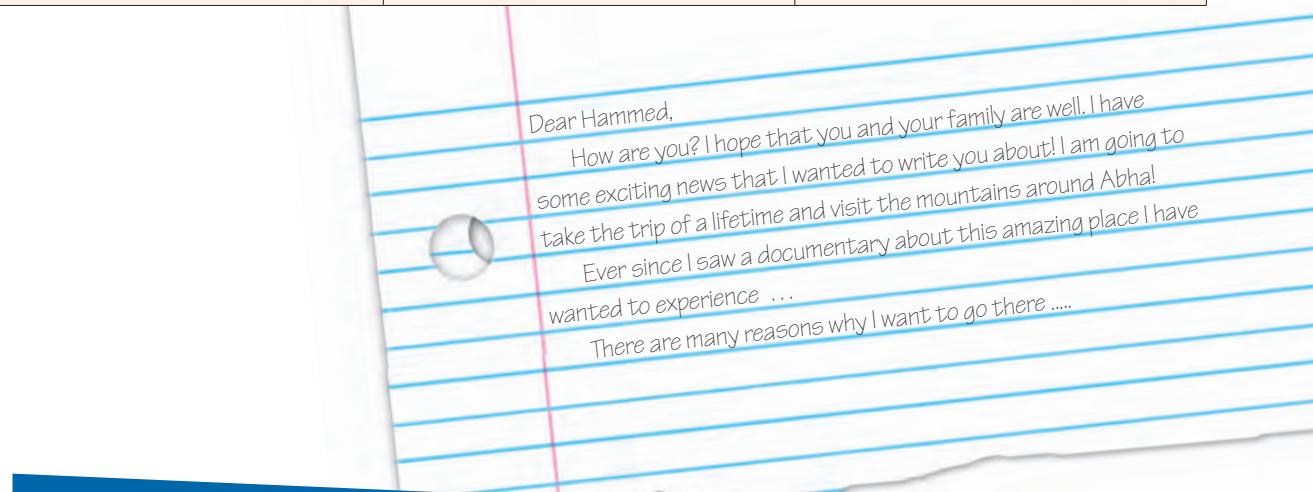
- Hiking or climbing the mountains around Abha
- Paragliding in the mountains of Asir
- Scuba diving in the Red Sea
- Kite-surfing in the Gulf or the Red Sea

1. Research and collect information and materials about the place, e.g. photos, history, and facts.

2. Use the organizer to make notes on:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• what you know about the place• new information that you have found• activities/things you can do there | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• your reasons for choosing the place• examples and details |
|--|--|

Name of the place:		
Places to visit/see and reasons	Things I can do there/activities and reasons	Examples and details (from your research)



Writing Corner

When you write an informal letter:

- Open in a friendly way with an appropriate greeting and tell your friend why you are writing.
- When you are giving news such as an up and coming trip you will take, give as many details as you can. Use lots of words to describe the place or the experience.
- Note down your feelings, expectations, assumptions, questions, and doubts.
- Plan what information you are going to include in each paragraph.
- Close in an appropriate way and sign off with: Speak soon; Give my best wishes to your family; Write to me soon; and so on.

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Future with Be Going To

Use *be going to* for the future, to talk about plans.

Affirmative (+)

I'm **going to** travel to Jordan.

Yes-No Questions (?)

Are you **going to** travel to Jordan?

Negative (-)

I'm **not going to** visit Petra.

Short Answer (+)

Yes, I am.

Short Answer (-)

No, I'm not.

Information Questions

What are you going to do on your vacation?

I'm going to travel to Africa.

When is he going to leave?

He's going to leave next week.

Which countries is he going to visit?

He's going to visit Tunisia and Morocco.

How are we going to go?

We're going to go by plane.

Where am I going to stay?

You're going to stay in a four-star hotel.

Who is going to travel with them?

They're going to travel with friends.

How long are they going to stay?

They're going to stay for a month.

Position of Adjectives

Antarctica is an **exotic** place. (*before nouns*)

Antarctica is **exotic**. (*after the verb **be***)

A. Complete the article. Use the adjectives in the box.

coastal dense fertile humid local tropical

JAZAN

Jazan, in southwestern Saudi Arabia, is a (1) coastal city on the Red Sea. It is the capital city of Jazan Province near the Yemeni border. Although it is a small province, it has a (2) _____ population of 1.5 million inhabitants. The terrain of the region is varied, consisting of mountains, (3) _____ plains, coasts, and islands. Jazan is famous for its (4) _____ products, especially its (5) _____ fruits like mango, figs, and papaya. The climate in the city of Jazan is very hot and (6) _____ in the summer, while temperatures in the mountains to the northeast are much cooler.

B. Add the question words. Match the questions and the answers.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Which</u> suitcase are you going to take? _____ | a. In a beautiful hotel. |
| 2. _____ are they going to travel? _____ | b. To their parents. |
| 3. _____ is he going to do when he arrives? _____ | c. They're going to take a bus. |
| 4. _____ are they going to write to? _____ | d. They're going to arrive in the morning. |
| 5. _____ are we going to stay? _____ | e. The red one. It's new. |
| 6. _____ are we going to get there? _____ | f. He's going to rest. |



11 Form, Meaning and Function

Future with Be Going To

- Ask a student to read aloud the affirmative and negative statements in the first part of the presentation. Have students focus on the form.
- Explain that the function of **be going to** is to express actions, intentions, and plans that have already been decided on (ie They are planned actions).
- Have two students read the question and answers. Review the rules for word-order change in questions.

Information Questions

- Have students brainstorm the question words they know before looking at the questions listed in the presentation.
- Call on students to read aloud the questions and answers in the next part of the chart.
- Ask students to read aloud the questions and answers.

Language Builder

Point out that when we ask questions with a *Wh*-question word, we can make a contraction with *is*, but not with *are*. For example, *When's he going to leave? Who's going to travel with them?*

Position of Adjectives

- Write the following example sentences on the board. Elicit and underline the adjective:
Saudi Arabia is an interesting place.
Saudi Arabia and Jordan are interesting places.
- Ask: *Does the adjective go before or after the noun?* (before) *Does the adjective change for singular and plural nouns?* (no) *How do we say the sentences on the board without the word **place**?* (Saudi Arabia is interesting. Saudi Arabia and Abu Dhabi are interesting.) Point out that adjectives go before a noun but after the verb *be*.
- Have students make statements about places they know about, using an adjective. For example: *Riyadh is crowded.* Have another student make a corroborating statement, such as: *Yes, Riyadh is a crowded city.*
- Read the explanation of adjective placement and example sentences aloud. Ask students: *Is this the same or different in your language?*

Language Builder

Point out the use of the articles *a/an* in most phrases with singular nouns. For example: *Saudi Arabia is **an** interesting place. Riyadh is **a** wonderful city.*

A

- Have students look at the title of the text and ask: *What do you know about this place?* Elicit as much information as possible about the location, the architecture, the history, etc.
- Point out the adjectives in the box. Have a student read the words aloud and go over the meaning of any that are new.
- Have students complete the article alone and then check their answers with a partner

Answers

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. coastal | 3. fertile | 5. tropical |
| 2. dense | 4. local | 6. humid |

B

- Have students work alone to write the correct question word. Then have them ask and answer the questions in pairs.

Answers

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Which, e | 3. What, f | 5. Where, a |
| 2. How, c | 4. Who, b | 6. When, d |

Language Builder

When *be going to* is used with *go* to indicate an event that will take place in the future, the second *go* is often omitted. For example, *I'm going to Africa for vacation; I'm going to go to Africa for vacation* mean the same.

Additional Activity

Ask students to either make notes about a vacation they have already planned OR to plan one now. Students should then take it in turns to ask questions to find out as much information as they can about their partner's vacation plans.

3 Far and Away

Present Progressive

- Go over the material in the chart. Elicit or explain that we use the present progressive to talk about actions that are taking place now.
- Explain that the present progressive is formed with the present form of *be* + the *-ing* form of a verb. Write the base form of several verbs on the board, and have students say and then spell the *-ing* form of the verb. Use any verbs from the presentation or others that you think might be appropriate.
- Point out the inversion in the word order in the questions. Put the following words in scrambled order on the board:
now/ is/What/ your (family member)/doing?
your friends/What/doing/are/now?
- Ask students to unscramble the words to form questions and then work in pairs to ask and answer the questions. Tell students that if they do not know the answer for sure, they can imagine an answer with I think. For example, *I think my mother is preparing dinner now*.
- Call on students to tell the class what their partner's family member or friend is doing now.
- Point out the examples of the present progressive for the future: *My friends are arriving tomorrow. What are you doing tonight?* Elicit and underline the future time words (tomorrow, tonight) to talk about future actions.

Future with Going to and Will

- Write the following phrases on the board:
I'll definitely..., I'll probably..., Maybe I'll..., I don't think I'll..., I definitely won't...
- Ask: *What do you think you'll do in the coming year?* Have students respond using the phrases on the board.
- Focus students' attention on the information in the presentation.

Time Expressions for the Future

- Go over the future time expressions in the example sentences in the presentation.
- Have students form a sentence of their own for each time expression. For example, *I'm going to study for our English test tomorrow night.*

C

- Have students complete the schedule truthfully for themselves before they work in pairs to do the exercise.
- As students work together, go around and monitor their conversations. Make a note of any mistakes you hear with use of future forms and/or time expressions and write them on the board.
- Have students peer correct each other's mistakes.

Answers

Students' own answers.

D

- Go over the time expressions in the box. Call on one student and demonstrate the exchange by asking and answering truthfully.
- Students work in pairs to complete the exercise. encourage them to use all the time expressions in the box.

Answers

Students' own answers.

Workbook

Assign pages 29-30 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.



Teaching Tip

When possible, have students do activities with their books closed. It helps to focus their attention if they are looking at you and what you are doing on the board rather than looking down at their books.

Present Progressive

Use the present progressive for actions happening now or for definite arrangements in the future.

My friends **are waiting** for me at the airport.
What **are** you **doing** now?

My friends **are arriving** tomorrow.
What **are** you **doing** tonight?

Future with *Going to* and *Will*

Use *(be +) going to* to talk about plans. Use *will + maybe/probably* for uncertain or indefinite plans.

What are you **going to** do on your vacation?
I'm **going to** travel to Europe.
I'm not **going to** travel this year.

Where **will** you stay?
Maybe I'll stay with friends.
I probably **won't** stay in a hotel.

Time Expressions for the Future

I am leaving **tomorrow night**.
This year we will go on vacation to Dubai.
They are flying to Oman **on Thursday**.

Hurry! They will be here **soon!**
I am meeting her **in an hour**.
We will sit examinations **next month**.

- C. Complete your schedule for next Saturday. Then ask and answer questions with a partner.
Try to arrange a time to meet and do homework together.

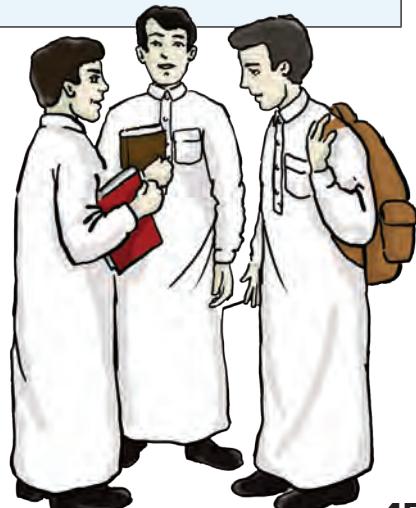
A: What are you doing at two o'clock next Saturday?
B: I'm getting a haircut. How about you?

My Schedule	Activities and Times	My Partner's Schedule	Activities and Times
Morning		Morning	
Afternoon		Afternoon	
Evening		Evening	

- D. Look at the expressions in the box. Work with a partner. Ask and answer about their future plans. Use *going to* and *will*.

💡 A: Where **are** you **going to go** on vacation this year?
B: I'll probably go to Dubai. How about you?
A: I'm going to visit my grandparents.

tomorrow • this week/ month / year • tonight
next month/ year/ Tuesday • soon • on the weekend



3 Far and Away

12 Project

1. Make a poster promoting ecotourism in your country. Work in pairs or groups.
2. Choose a place that would be good for ecotourism.
3. Research and complete the chart with information and details about the place.
4. Collect visuals and find samples of posters on the Internet to help you.
5. Design your poster. Think of a slogan and/or an attractive title. Look at the photo in your book and find more examples on the Internet to help you.

An area for ecotourism in Saudi Arabia: _____		
Questions we would like to find answers to	Details and information we found out about the place	Pictures and images we can use in our poster
What kind of place is it? Is it an inland area? Is it a coastal area?		
How can visitors travel and explore the area?		
What can they see, observe, or experience?		
What outdoor activities can visitors do? (e.g. off-road driving, rock climbing, desert trekking, etc.)		
How is money raised in order to maintain the area?		
How are local communities and people involved? Jobs? (e.g. caretakers, guides, rangers, etc.)		
What are some of the environmental benefits?		

When you prepare a poster, remember it should:

- be quite large, so it can be noticed or read when posted on the wall
- be colorful in a tasteful way and have photos and/or drawings
- include memorable slogans
- convey a strong message
- be appealing to the viewer



12 Project



- Organize students in groups and have them brainstorm on ecotourism in their country. Suggest that they think about:
 - People
 - Places
 - Transport
 - Activities
 - Animals
 - Plants
 - Climate
 - Accommodation
- Encourage them to think about different things if they wish. Remind them to choose one or two people in their group to make notes as they discuss their ideas.
- Call on a student from each group to present some of their ideas for the class.
- Tell students that they will have to design a poster about the place with a slogan to attract visitors. Encourage them to use their imagination and visualize travel and new activities in the area. Elicit ideas, think about traditional options for transport and accommodation.
- Have students read directions 1 to 4 and tell them to use the chart and make notes about the questions raised. Set a time limit for groups to decide or distribute issues to members of the group to think about and then discuss and finalize.
- Circulate and monitor participation. Encourage quieter students to participate. Help when necessary.
- Give them time to discuss and decide on the options that they will use.
- Read directions for 5 with the class. Explain to students that they will need a large sheet of paper (e.g. the size used for flip charts) or a large sheet of cardboard. Tell them that they can use any color they want and choose pictures or draw their own.. Remind them that they will need a catchy slogan.
- Direct students to the guidelines at the bottom of the page. Call on a volunteer to read the guidelines. Elicit ideas and comments from the class.
- Allow time for research. This means that if students don't have access to the internet or a library they might not be able to collect the information and/or photos they need. In this case it would be advisable to ask them to share the tasks they need to complete, do the research, collect information and visuals and complete the poster in the next lesson.

- Call on each group to present their poster.
- Display the posters on the wall if you can. Have students choose the poster they like best.

Additional Activity

Have students work in groups to plan and create an ecotourism leaflet. Tell them to use their ideas and notes in the chart and plan a 2-page promotional leaflet promoting an ecotourist package trip in the area that they have chosen.

Teaching Tip

All classes are diverse to a lesser or greater degree. Due to this, there will be students who will know more about certain things each time. Try not to let them tell you what they know but address their classmates and report the information they have to them as effectively as possible. This way, everyone will be involved and you will increase learner interaction.

13 Self Reflection



- Write 'Far and Away' on the board and elicit as many ideas and words as possible from the class. List the words on the board.
- Have students scan pages 34 and 35. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked about this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:

What is special about Capsule hotels and Jules' Undersea Lodge?

Where is the world's largest commercial tree house? Which of these places would you choose to stay in? Why?

Which would you never choose to stay in? Why?

- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 36, 37, ask them to rephrase some sentences. Tell them to try and convey the same meaning. For example:

I've almost finished writing my essay.

I have a couple of lines to go /I'll finish very soon.

You're not working hard enough.

You should work harder.

Frankly, I don't think I'd like to come back here.

I really dislike this place./ I don't like it here at all.

He actually jumped into the river with his clothes on to find his cell phone.

We didn't think he would do it but he jumped into the river to find his cell phone.

- Have volunteers answer the questions. Elicit more options from pairs of students after you give them a couple of minutes to think.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.
- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 38, 39. Call on volunteers to say what the conversation is about in this lesson, and which expressions they remember.
- Have students say what they remember from this section and make notes in the chart.
- Write Ecotourism on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember. Call on volunteers to list as much as possible on the board.
- Organize students in pairs and ask them to answer questions like these:

What is your opinion about Ecotourism?

Would you have chosen ecotourism as a travel option? Why? Why not?

- Have students complete their Self Reflection charts as before about likes, dislikes and things they found easy or difficult.
- Before directing students to 10 Writing ask them to say what they know/remember about the Galapagos. Give them some time to work in pairs and then call on volunteers to answer.
- Have students comment on essay writing and how they felt about writing an essay instead of a different type of text, e.g. story, article. Call on volunteers to present their views.
- Have students scan pages 42 and 43 and make notes as before.

- Direct students to the 12 Project page and hold a discussion about what they found more or less useful and more or less interesting. Hold a class discussion about project work. Elicit ideas from the students and have them present their experiences for the class.

Did they have difficulty making decisions in their group? Why? Why not?

Did they feel that they had the chance to present their ideas?

Was it difficult or easy to collect information about the place chosen? Why? Why not?

Where did they find information? Where did they find photos?

Did they enjoy the poster presentation?

Would they change anything if they had the chance to do it again? What?

Did they enjoy designing the poster? Did everyone contribute?

Was there room for originality and creativity? Why? Why not?

- Allow time for students to make notes on the project section individually. Then have them check with a partner.
- Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.
- Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 3:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 3:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 3:

Unit 3 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about travel experiences and travel dreams			
discuss hotels and services			
make and decline special requests			
use adverbs of degree			
use sentence adverbs			
talk about the future with <i>be going to</i> and <i>will</i>			
ask information questions			
know about the position of adjectives			
use the present progressive to make future arrangements			

My five favorite new words from Unit 3:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 3:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

EXPANSION Units 1–3

1 Language Review



A. Complete each sentence with the correct form of **do**, **have**, or **be**.

1. Sam _____ never had a credit card.
2. _____ Jen need help moving this weekend?
3. It _____ a coincidence that we got here at the same time.
4. Don was disappointed when he _____ not get the job.
5. Omar has _____ living in the same house his entire life.
6. The euro _____ introduced in Europe in 2002.
7. Since I _____ already eaten dinner, I declined the invitation to the restaurant.
8. How often _____ you eat lunch in the cafeteria?



B. Change the active sentences to passive sentences.

1. People grow coffee in eighty different countries.
2. The jury will give the verdict tomorrow morning.
3. Painters are painting my house at this very moment.
4. The country is holding the presidential election next week.
5. They have held the football match at Gardner Stadium for the last eight years.
6. The school has cancelled classes for today.
7. Someone wrote this book in the 18th century.
8. The police arrested the suspect near the scene of the crime.

C. Complete each sentence with the past perfect or past perfect progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

1. The train _____ already _____ by the time we got to the station. (leave)
2. The cat _____ the tuna from the table when he yelled at it. (eat)
3. By 11:00 yesterday morning, we _____ to three shopping malls. (be)
4. She called the police because someone _____ her. (follow)
5. Julie didn't apply for the job because she _____ already _____ a different job. (find)
6. My brother _____ never _____ on his own before he got that apartment. (live)
7. I offered to drive him, but he _____ already _____ a taxi. (call)
8. I _____ to call her when suddenly she knocked on my door! (try)



Unit Goals

Language Review

Reading

Computer Viruses:
A Headache
for Humans

Language Plus

Writing

Write about a problem
or difficult situation
you have experienced

1 Language Review

A

- This exercise reviews the use of *do*, *have*, and *be* as auxiliary verbs, which was presented in Unit 1. Refer students to the grammar chart on page 8 to review as necessary.
- As a quick review, before students complete the sentences, write the following sentences on the board and elicit the auxiliary verbs that go in the blanks.

Jen ____ **finished her homework.** (has)

We ____ **invited to Tom's graduation party.**

(were/are)

He ____ **talking on his cell phone now.** (is)

____ **you watch the film last night?** (Did)

When you called, I ____ **already left.** (had)

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences.

Answers

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------|---------|--------|
| 1. has | 3. is / was | 5. been | 7. had |
| 2. Does | 4. did | 6. was | 8. do |

B

- This exercise reviews the passive, which was presented in Unit 2. Refer students to the chart on page 22 to review as necessary.
- Write this sentence on the board: **An electrician installed the alarm.** Ask a volunteer to change it to the passive. (The alarm was installed by an electrician.) Remind students that the passive is formed with *be* + the past participle of the verb. Working with the same sentence, call on students to change the sentence to different tenses; for example, the future with *will*. (The alarm will be installed by an electrician.) Continue asking for the simple present (is installed),

present and past progressive (is/was being installed), and the present and past perfect (has/had been installed).

- Have students work with a partner to write the passive sentences. One student writes sentences 1 to 4 and the other writes sentences 5 to 8. Then they exchange and check each other's work.
- Review the sentences with the class. Remind students that passive sentences often do not mention the person who performs the action. Ask: **Which is the one sentence in this exercise that should include a phrase with by?** (Number 2)

Answers

- Coffee is grown in eighty different countries.
- The verdict will be given tomorrow morning by the jury.
- My house is being painted at this very moment.
- The presidential election will be held next week.
- The football match has been held at Gardner Stadium for the last eight years.
- Classes have been cancelled for today.
- This book was written in the 18th century.
- The suspect was arrested near the scene of the crime.

C

- This exercise reviews the past perfect forms presented in Unit 2 on page 22.
- Write the following sentence on the board:

They ____ **(work) on the essay for two hours when Tom called and said that the teacher** ____ **(change) the topic.**

Ask students: **Which verb should be in the past perfect progressive? (work) Why?** (It's an activity that was continuing for a time before they got the phone call.) Have a student come to the board and write the correct verb forms in the blanks. (had been working, had changed)

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Check answers as a class.

Answers

- had, left
- had been eating
- had been
- had followed / had been following
- had, found
- had, lived
- had, called
- had been trying

EXPANSION Units 1–3

D

- This exercise reviews adverbs of degree, which were presented in Unit 3. Refer students to the chart on page 36.
- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Point out that it is usually necessary to make other changes to the sentence in addition to adding the adverb. Students need to rewrite the sentence to express the same idea. In the example, the words *at all* are deleted when *absolutely* is added.
- Write sentences 1 and 2 on the board and elicit the responses from the class.
 1. **I barely slept last night.** (The words *very little* are deleted.)
 2. **We're almost there.** (The tense changes from future to present and *soon* is omitted.)
- Have students work with a partner to rewrite sentences 3 to 8. As students are working, go around the room and help as needed. For sentence 7, suggest that they change the verb from *write* to *rewrite*.
- Check answers by having students write their new sentences on the board.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. I barely slept last night.
 2. We're almost there.
 3. You look so different that I hardly recognized you.
 4. I'm nearly done with this book.
 5. That is an extremely funny photo.
 6. The altitude was so high that I could barely breathe.
 7. The essay was in such bad shape that it had to be completely rewritten.
 8. The hairstylist cut my hair too short.
- For additional practice with adverbs of degree, write phrases like the following on the board: **barely knew, hardly ate, nearly finished, extremely tired, completely unnecessary, too excited, almost, certain.** Have students work with a partner to write original sentences with the phrases. Have students read one or two of their sentences aloud to the class.

E

- This exercise reviews sentence adverbs presented in Unit 3. Refer students to the chart on page 36 for review as necessary.
- Have students work individually to circle the correct words. Check answers by calling on students to read the sentences aloud.

Answers

1. probably
2. Unfortunately
3. certainly
4. Presumably
5. Obviously
6. certainly
7. Honestly
8. officially
9. Presumably

F

- This exercise reviews both sentence adverbs and adverbs of degree.
- Have students look at the first sentence stem and elicit possible answers from several different students. Then have students work individually to complete the rest of the sentences.
- Check answers by having two or three students read their completed sentences for each item.

Answers

Answers will vary.

Workbook

Assign pages 31–33 for review of vocabulary and grammar presented in Units 1–3.

D. Rewrite each sentence using the adverb of degree in parentheses.

💡 I have no money at all on me. (absolutely)

I have absolutely no money on me.

1. I slept very little last night. (barely)
2. We'll be there soon. (almost)
3. You look so different that I almost didn't recognize you. (hardly)
4. I'll be done with this book soon. (nearly)
5. That is such a funny photo. (extremely)
6. The altitude was so high that I had a lot of trouble breathing. (barely)
7. The essay was in such bad shape, it had to be written all over again. (completely)
8. The hairstylist cut my hair shorter than I like. (too)

E. Circle the best sentence adverb for each sentence.

1. I'll (probably / fortunately) apply to at least three colleges.
2. (Unfortunately / Presumably), we won't be able to join you for dinner. We have other plans.
3. I am (certainly / unluckily) not going to tell him something that will upset him.
4. He goes out every night. (Presumably / Honestly), he has a lot of friends.
5. You have a big smile on your face. (Obviously / Actually) you did well on the exam.
6. I would (certainly / presumably) recommend staying home today if you feel sick.
7. (Honestly / Apparently), I didn't know that the project was due today.
8. I'm having a dinner party on the 3rd, although (officially / naturally) I don't graduate until the 11th.
9. That is an extraordinary bracelet! (Presumably / Admittedly), you keep it in a safe place.

F. Complete each sentence about yourself. Discuss your sentences with a partner.

1. One thing I absolutely can't stand is _____.
2. I am completely happy when I _____.
3. One time I almost _____.
4. I'm very excited about _____.
5. Unfortunately, I _____.
6. Luckily, I _____.
7. Admittedly, I am not good at _____.
8. Sometimes I can be extremely _____.
9. I have been told that I am quite _____.
10. One thing I am very frightened of is _____.



2 Reading



Before Reading

Read the passage and underline details that tell you how a computer virus and a biological virus are similar.

Computer Viruses: A Headache for Humans

A computer virus is a computer program that has the ability to infect a computer without the user's permission, or even knowledge. There are more than a few similarities between computer viruses and human viruses.

Biological viruses enter the body through some kind of direct contact with the body and attach themselves to a *host cell*. The virus spreads, and the resulting damage can include pain, suffering, or even death. Similarly, computer viruses enter a *host file* in your computer when you open an infected email attachment. This virus then spreads, resulting in damage that can include deletion of files, emailing of all the addresses in the computer's email address book, a slowing down of the system, or even fatal damage to the hard drive.

If these viruses are so damaging, why do people allow them to infiltrate their computers? Because people are tricked into it. Viruses are sent attached to email messages. These emails use a variety of tricks to fool the reader into opening up the attachment. For example, some of these emails are designed to appeal to people's emotions. The "YOU HAVE WON" virus included an attachment titled "A-Gift-For-You.text.vbs." Users, thinking they had been sent a gift letter, opened the file, instantly releasing a virus and infecting their computer. Another common virus



disguised as a personal message is "Koob." "Koob" is spread through messages sent through social networking sites. The emails have subject lines like, "You look funny on our new video." When users try to download the "video," what they really get is a virus.

Another common way email users are manipulated into opening attachments that contain viruses is with messages that appear to come from businesses that people frequently use. These typically include auction sites, delivery services, and financial institutions. One such virus is the "UPS/FedEx Delivery Failure." This email comes with a message informing the user that a package he or she had supposedly sent could not be delivered. Users are told to click on the attachment for a refund. In reality, of course, the attachment unleashes a virus.

Ironically, one virus-spreading email was disguised to look like an email about protecting the user's computer from viruses! The "Microsoft Patch" virus was spread through an email that urged the user to download a software patch to prevent viruses. This email even included the Microsoft™ icon, which fooled many into believing the email was legitimate. In reality, the "patch" was a virus. This virus was forwarded by millions of people, resulting in the infection of computers around the world.

2 Reading

- With books closed, ask students what they know about both human and computer viruses. Make notes of some of their ideas on the board.

READING STRATEGY Ask questions before reading

- Tell students that good readers often think of questions, things they want to know about a topic, before they start to read. Put students in pairs and have each pair write two questions about computer viruses.
- Ask three or four pairs to share their questions with the class. Write these on the board. Then ask if anyone has any different questions. The following are some questions students might suggest. (Not all of these are answered in the reading.)

What is a computer virus?

How do computers get viruses?

Who creates virus programs?

What do computer viruses do to a computer?

How can you protect your computer from getting viruses?

What should you do if your computer gets a virus?

- Play the audio of the reading. Have students listen and follow along.
- Review the list of questions on the board. Which questions did the article answer? Which didn't it answer?
- Ask a few additional questions about key points in the article not covered in the After Reading questions. For example:

How serious is the damage viruses can cause in computers? (It's very serious. It can completely destroy all the information on a hard drive.)

How do viruses take advantage of social networking sites? (They use the email services on the sites to email people who are members.)

Why did people believe that the "Microsoft Patch" was real? (It had the company logo on it.)

Why do people who send viruses use the names of well-known businesses like UPS and Microsoft? (Because many people use these sites and trust the companies.)

- For additional vocabulary practice, write the following definitions and paragraph numbers on the board. Have students find the word that fits the definition in the paragraph.

paragraph 2

having a disease or virus of some kind (infected)

paragraph 3

having a different appearance; hiding the true identity of a person or thing (disguised)

paragraph 4

let something loose, often before an attack (unleash)

paragraph 5

happening in the opposite way from what is expected (ironically)

genuine, following the laws or rules (legitimate)

paragraph 6

prevent; stop yourself from doing something (avoid)

Culture Notes

UPS (United Parcel Service) and FedEx (Federal Express) are both companies that offer package delivery services worldwide. Among the services they offer customers is the ability to track packages online to find out exactly when a package reaches its destination.

Microsoft™ Corporation is a multinational computer corporation based in the U.S. It makes products for computers such as the Windows® operating system used by almost all PC computers and the set of programs known as Microsoft Office, which includes word processing, spreadsheet, email, and presentation programs. Bill Gates, the founder and major owner of Microsoft, recently retired from his job as CEO in order to devote more time to the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, a charitable organization that works in the fields of health and education around the world.

After Reading

A

- Have students look at the list of words and find each word in the article. Discuss each word and elicit the meaning appropriate for the context.
paragraph 2
fatal damage to the hard drive = describing damage or an error that can't be fixed, deadly
paragraph 3
allow them to infiltrate their computers = to get into or gain access to a place secretly
paragraph 4
users are manipulated = controlled or influenced by someone
paragraph 5
an email that urged the user = tried strongly to persuade someone to do something
paragraph 6
Think of the precautions you take = things you do to prevent something bad from happening
- Have students work individually to complete the sentences.
- Check answers by calling on students to read their completed sentences aloud.

Answers

- infiltrate
- fatal
- urge
- manipulated
- precaution

B

- Put students in groups of three to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by having groups report their answers to the class. Have students support their answers by referring back to parts of the article with the correct information.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- A computer virus is a program that can get into a computer's system and damage it without the user knowing about it.
- Biological viruses get into the body through one of the body's cells, called a "host cell." Computer viruses enter a computer through a "host file" that the user downloads to the hard drive. Both viruses are like an infection that spreads and causes damage.
- It's a virus that comes as an email attachment to a message about a problem with the delivery of a package. It tells the user to click on the attachment. The attachment contains a virus that then gets into the computer.
- It is spread through an email that urges the user to download a software patch to prevent viruses.
- You should install anti-virus software and avoid opening emails with potentially infected files.

Discussion

- Arrange students into small groups. Assign each group one of the discussion questions. Give students five or six minutes to discuss the question.
- Have one person in each group report the results of their discussion to the class and ask the class if they agree or not. This should end up in a general class discussion of all of the questions.

Additional Activity

In groups, have students make posters about how people can protect themselves against computer viruses. The poster should list suggestions and include illustrations. Students may need time out of class to do additional research for this. Have students present and explain their posters to the class.

Workbook

Assign pages 34–35 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Do all you can to avoid exposing your computer to a virus. Think of the precautions you take against catching biological infections. You wash your hands and avoid contact with sick people. Extend the same care to your computer. Consider investing in antivirus software. And whatever you do, avoid opening emails with potentially infected files. You may just save your computer from contracting a nasty illness, and yourself from suffering a terrible headache.



After Reading

A. Complete each sentence with one of these words:

fatal	infiltrate	manipulated	precaution	urge
-------	------------	-------------	------------	------

1. How did the spy _____ the government building? Weren't there security guards on duty?
2. Due to several _____ design flaws in the operating system, all the computers in the office crashed.
3. You must stop smoking. I _____ you to consider the impact it has on your body.
4. The business man _____ the client to make him do what he wanted.
5. Elena thought it might rain. So she took the _____ of bringing an umbrella.

B. Answer the questions.

1. What is a computer virus?
2. Describe the similarities between human and computer viruses.
3. What is the "UPS/FedEx Delivery Failure" virus?
4. What is ironic about the "Microsoft Patch" virus?
5. What are some steps you can take to prevent your computer from being infected by a virus?

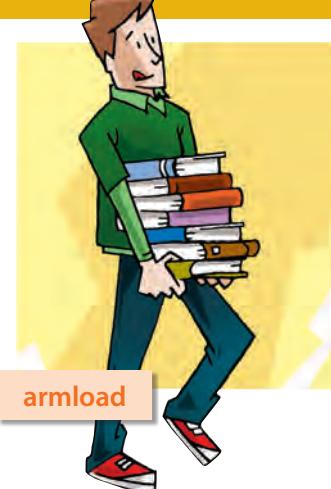
Discussion

1. Has your computer or a friend's ever been infected by a virus?
2. How did it happen?
3. What did you do? What did your friend do?
4. Why do you think there are so many computer viruses?
5. What kind of punishment is appropriate for people who create and spread viruses?

EXPANSION Units 1–3

3 Language Plus Aa

A. Complete each sentence with one of the words shown.



1. A _____ of supplies has arrived to help the victims of the earthquake.
2. You need to _____ those crates carefully. They're full of computer equipment.
3. Grab an _____ of dirty clothes and bring it to the laundry room.
4. We can _____ our presentation onto the classroom Internet site.
5. You shouldn't _____ that electrical outlet with so many appliances.
6. I'm going to _____ a game from a new online game store.

4 Writing i

Tools for Writing: Capitalization

Do not capitalize names of seasons.

Use a capital letter for:

- the first letter of the first word of a sentence
- the pronoun
- proper nouns (specific people, places, organizations)
- days of the week, months of the year, and holidays
- countries, nationalities, and languages
- the first word of a quoted sentence

Rewrite each sentence with correct capitalization.

1. my mother and i traveled to london together last year.
2. will james attend harvard university in the fall?
3. when i asked to see doctor atar, the receptionist said, "the doctor just left."
4. people from haiti speak french and creole.
5. this year, earth day falls on a tuesday.

3 Language Plus

- Focus students' attention on the pictures and their captions. Ask: **What do all of the words have in common?** (They end with -load.) Tell students that a *load* is an amount of something that a person or vehicle can carry. Use questions like the following to elicit the meanings of the words shown.

What does the woman have in her hand?

(a *To Do* list)

What's her problem? (She has too much to do. She has an *overload* of work.)

Is there a lot of fruit on the truck or a little? (There's a lot. The truck is full. It's a *truckload* of fruit.)

What is someone doing with the computer and the memory stick? (They're *downloading* computer games from the computer to the memory stick.)

What is someone doing with the camera and the computer? (They're *uploading* pictures from the camera to the computer.)

How many books is the man carrying? (He's carrying an *armload* of books.)

What is the man doing with the boxes? (He's taking them off the boat. He's *offloading* them.)

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Check by calling on students to read the sentences.

Answers

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. truckload | 3. armload | 5. overload |
| 2. offload | 4. upload | 6. download |

Language Builder

Overload can be a noun or a verb. For example:

We had an overload of work this weekend. (noun)

Don't overload the boat. (verb)

The expression *truckload* is sometimes used to mean a lot of something, not literally things on a truck. For example: *We earned a truckload of money last summer.*

An *armload* is as much as a person can carry in his arms. This word is almost always used to describe what someone is carrying.

We *download* files from the Internet to a computer or a memory stick. We *upload* pictures from a camera to a computer. We also *upload* files from a computer to the Internet.

4 Writing

Tools for Writing: Capitalization

- Read the capitalization rules with the class. Write the following examples for each rule on the board.

He's a student.

I'm here.

Tom, New York, Microsoft

Monday, January, Thanksgiving

Mexico, Venezuelan, Spanish

He said, "That's a great car!"

- Have students work individually to rewrite the sentences with the correct capitalization. Then have them compare sentences with a partner.
- Check answers by having students write the sentences on the board.

Answers

- My mother and I traveled to London together last year.
- Will James attend Harvard University in the fall?
- When I asked to see Doctor Atar, the receptionist said, "The doctor just left."
- People from Haiti speak French and Creole.
- This year, Earth's Day falls on a Tuesday.

Additional Activity

Make, or have students make, sets of cards with one rule for capitalization on each card. In order to have more cards, you can separate some of the rules into separate items. For example, make one card for days, another for months, and another for holidays.

Then make, or have students make, cards with an example for each rule. Students use the cards to play a Concentration game. They mix up the cards and lay them out face down. Playing in teams or as individuals, students take turns turning over two cards, trying to match the rules with the examples.

Writing Prompt

- Read the Writing Prompt with the class.
- Brainstorm briefly a few more ideas that students might use for their own stories. Point out that they need to choose one short event as a topic, not something like “My First Year in High School.”

Developing Your Writing: The Introduction

- Before students begin to write their essays, focus their attention on the box *Developing Your Writing: The Introduction*. Then have them look at the sample essay, *The Day My Computer Died*. Ask questions, such as the following:

Which sentence tells what the essay is about?

(Something unexpected happened...)

How does the introduction make you want to know more about the story? (It says that something unexpected happened, but it doesn't say what it was.)

How did the writer prepare to write the final paper?

(He or she did research in the library, took notes, and organized the ideas.)

When did the writer start writing the paper?

(the week before it was due)

What was the writer going to do on the last night before the paper was due? (run a spell check)

What happened then? (The computer froze.)

How do you think the writer will continue the story in the next paragraph? (probably by saying how he or she felt and how the problem was solved)

Write Your Personal Narrative

- Have students discuss a few ideas for their own narratives with a partner and then choose the one that they would like to describe.
- Have students work individually to complete the chart. They make notes about the problem(s) and the solution(s) in their story.
- Before students write their narrative, you might have them tell their story to a partner and listen to their partner's story. This will help them organize their ideas and tell the story more clearly.
- Have students work individually to think of a title and write their narratives. Tell them that they can wait until after they write to choose a title if they want to.

- Have students reread their essays and revise them. Tell them to check to make sure that they used grammar points from Units 1, 2, and 3. Write the target grammar points on the board for their reference:

auxiliary verbs

the passive

the past perfect and past perfect progressive

adverbs of degree

sentence adverbs

- If students have not used any of these grammar points, ask them to try to include at least two or three different grammar points from the units as they revise the essay. They don't have to use them all. Students might do this as homework.
- Post the students' essays on the walls of the classroom and invite students to walk around the room and read each other's essays. You might give prizes for different things, such as The Funniest Story, The Worst Problem, The Most Creative Solution, etc.

Teaching Tip

Explain that revising is a very important part of writing. Professional writers may spend as much or even more time revising and editing their work as they do on the original writing. Real revision does more than just fix mistakes. It makes the writing clearer and more interesting for the reader.

Workbook

Assign page 36 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

Writing Prompt

Write a personal narrative about a problem or difficult situation you have experienced. Explain how you solved the problem or dealt with the situation. For example, you might write about a time your computer crashed the night before a report was due, or a time you were stuck at an airport overnight. Include grammar points from Units 1, 2, and 3.

A personal narrative is a story about something that happened to you.

Write Your Personal Narrative

1. Choose a problem or difficult situation you have experienced.
2. Think about the situation. How did it come about? How did you deal with it?
Use the chart to organize your ideas.

Problem(s)	Solution(s)

3. Think of a title for your narrative.
4. Write your narrative.

Developing Your Writing: The Introduction

The first paragraph of your writing is the introduction. The introduction should grab the reader's attention by expressing something interesting that makes the reader want to read more. The introduction should also include a topic sentence that states clearly what the essay is about. All the other sentences in the introduction should support the topic sentence.

As you write your introduction, ask yourself:

- Is this paragraph interesting and engaging? Will it make the reader want to know more?
- Does it include a topic sentence that clearly tells the reader what the essay is about?
- Do the other sentences support the topic sentence?

The Day My Computer Crashed

I'll never forget the last day of my freshman year at Abbington High School. The year had gone very well. I had made new friends, enjoyed my classes, and was expecting good grades in all of my courses. But something unexpected happened on the last day of the year.

I had done well in Mr. Martinez's history class all year. So I was not concerned when we were asked to write a final paper. In fact, I was even looking forward to it. I spent weeks in the library, researching my subject, taking notes, and organizing my ideas. I had started writing the essay a week before it was due. By the night before it was due, I had finished writing the essay and just needed to run a spell check. But as soon as I began the spell check, the screen froze...

4 TV Around the World



1 Listen and Discuss



1. What kind of television programs do you like to watch? Give some examples.
2. What kind of programs do you dislike? Why?
3. Which programs listed here would you watch? Which wouldn't you watch? Explain.



Jeopardy! Tuesday, 9:30 P.M.

Jeopardy! is a unique American quiz show that features trivia in history, literature, the arts, culture, science, sports, geography, wordplay, and more. The show is famous for its unusual answer-and-question format, which requires contestants to phrase their responses in question form, having been presented with clues. The first episode of the show was aired on March 30, 1964 and went through different stages, as a daytime series and a nighttime show. On September 10, 1984, *Jeopardy!* returned as a daily series with Alex Trebek as host and has been on ever since.



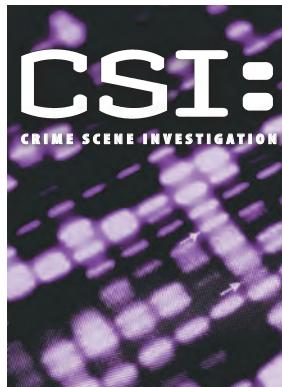
Hoy Monday, 9:00 A.M.

This Mexican morning show, recorded live in front of an audience, is broadcast in Mexico, the United States, Central and South America, and parts of Europe. A team of hosts offers family-oriented entertainment. On today's program, the guest chef cooks up some Peruvian shrimp, and a prosperous businessman gives advice to members of the audience.



National Geographic Channel

Thursday, 8:00 P.M. The National Geographic Channel is a television channel that features documentaries about science and technology, animals and nature, exploration and culture, produced by the National Geographic Society. It provides authentic and inspiring content for different age groups of viewers. The channel is dedicated to sharing factual knowledge and promoting genuine interest in our world, in an innovative and entertaining manner. National Geographic Channel was originally launched in the Middle East in 1998, followed by National Geographic Adventure in 2007, National Geographic Wild in 2008 and National Geographic Abu Dhabi in 2009. Today, it is available in 25 languages, in over 143 countries.



CSI: Crime Scene Investigation

Thursday, 9:00 P.M.

CSI is an American crime drama about a team of forensic scientists who investigate mysterious and unusual deaths. In tonight's episode, Grissom, Stokes, and Brown take on the puzzling case of a jogger killed in a park. At first the team suspects it is a strange accident. But they eventually discover that someone has been plotting a series of disturbing crimes.





Unit Goals

Vocabulary

TV genres
Reality shows

Functions

Discuss types of TV programs
Express and explain preferences
Express certainty

Grammar

Direct Objects
Indirect Objects
To and *For* Before
Indirect Objects

Listening

Listen for specific information

Pronunciation

Reduction of *going to* and *want to*

Reading

A Brief Overview of the History of Television

Writing

Write a book review

Form, Meaning and Function

Articles
Adjective Clauses and Relative Pronouns



Play the audio. Have students listen and read along in their books. Pause the recording after each program description to check general comprehension.

- Have students work in small groups to discuss the third introductory question, saying which programs they would watch, which they wouldn't watch, and why. Assign one student in each group the role of reporter.
- Have the reporter from each group summarize the group's discussion for the class, saying which programs were most popular with the students in the group.
- Ask students if they have seen the programs on this page or similar ones. For example, they may not have seen *Fawlty Towers* but they might have seen other sitcoms.
- For additional vocabulary practice, write the following definitions on the board and have students find the words in the program descriptions:

Jeopardy!

facts about past events in history, culture, sports, etc (trivia)

Hoy

a complete change of something, such as a person's clothing or hairstyle (makeover)

Fawlty Towers

an unlucky accident (mishap)

CSI: Crime Scene Investigation

violent and dangerous (vicious)

Top Gear

very unkind comment, intended to to wound the feelings of others (cutting comment)

Sasuke

to try to do something (attempt)

Language Builder

Point out that English speakers often use the term *soap opera* to refer to programs similar to telenovelas. One difference between soap operas and the Latin American genre of the telenovela is that soap operas never end. The stories just evolve over the years.

Warm Up

Tell students briefly about one TV program you like and one that you don't like. Then, with books closed, ask students the first two introductory questions. Have students discuss their answers with a partner.

Invite a few pairs to tell the class which programs they like and dislike.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Have students skim the descriptions of the TV programs to answer the questions below. Ask a question and have students raise their hands as soon as they find the answer. When three or four students have raised their hands, call on one student to answer the question.

Which program is about cars? (*Top Gear*)

Which program is a documentary? (*National Geographic* videos and shows)

Which program is a quiz show? (*Jeopardy!*)

Which program is good for family viewing? (*Hoy*)

Which is a sports program? (*Sasuke*)

Which program is from the U.S.? (*CSI*)

4 TV Around the World

Quick Check

A

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Tell them not to worry if they don't know some of the words. They should just make their best guess, using the context given.
- Have students compare answers with a partner. If their answers are different or if they don't know a word, have them look it up in a dictionary.
- Check answers by calling on students to read aloud the sentences. Have students find the words in the program descriptions and explain how each one is used in context.

Answers

- air, broadcast
- plot
- prosperous
- inspiring
- contestants
- puzzling
- version

B

- Have students work with a partner to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by calling on pairs to answer the questions.

Answers

- Top Gear*
- Hoy*
- Sasuke*
- National Geographic shows and documentaries
- Jeopardy!*
- CSI*

2 Pair Work

- Briefly brainstorm two or three ideas with the class for types of TV programs they might create. (This should be just enough to help them understand the task and then go on to think of their own ideas.) Write a few questions on the board to help them. For example:

What kind of program is it? (comedy, crime show, sports show, etc.)

If it's fictional (not a real-life story), what will the stories be about?

Who are the main characters?

What time should it air?

Who will the audience be? (children, teenagers, adults, families, etc.)

- Have students work in pairs to create their program. Tell them that they are going to have to sell their idea to the owners of the television station.
- Select a group of students to play the role of the owners of a television station. Then select a few pairs to present their ideas. The owners vote on the idea they like best.

Workbook

Assign page 37 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.

Teaching Tip

From time to time, have students write you a letter about their language-learning experience. They could tell you about things that are hard for them and why, or perhaps talk about how they will use English in the future. You should keep the contents of these letters confidential. You may not be able to answer all of the letters but answer a few of them each time, making sure that you always reply to different students.

Additional Activity

Have students tell a partner about one TV program that they have seen recently that they enjoyed. What was it about? Who was in it? Why did they like it?



- The longest running soap opera in the U.S. was a program called *Guiding Light*. It began as a radio program in 1937 and then became a TV program in 1952. The last episode was broadcast in September 2009.
- In Great Britain, a radio soap called *The Archers* has been running six episodes a week since 1951 for a total of over 15,000 episodes. One actor, Norman Painting, has played the role of Phil Archer since the program began.



Top Gear Wednesday, 9:30 P.M.

Top Gear is an award winning British television series about cars. It was originally launched as a conventional motoring magazine show. Since its relaunch in 2002, the new version has developed its own humorous style. The program is estimated to have about 350 million viewers worldwide. The show has received acclaim for its style and presentation as well as criticism for its content and some of the cutting comments made by presenters. It remains, however, one of the most popular motoring series worldwide.



Sasuke Wednesday, 8:00 P.M.

This popular Japanese sports entertainment program airs twice a year. Each three-hour special covers an entire competition in which 100 fighters and athletes compete in one of the most challenging physical contests imaginable. The contestants attempt to complete four levels of increasingly difficult obstacle courses to win the title of *Ninja Warrior*.

Quick Check ✓

A. Vocabulary. Complete the sentences with these words.

air	contestants	plot	puzzling
broadcast	inspiring	prosperous	version

1. Two words that mean "to transmit to an audience by radio or television station" are to _____ and to _____.
2. To plan something secretly is to _____.
3. Someone who has had financial success is _____.
4. Something that causes a feeling of excitement and strong desire to do something important is _____.
5. People who take part in a contest are called _____.
6. Something that is difficult to understand or solve is _____.
7. A variation of an earlier or original thing is a _____.

B. Comprehension. Name the show or shows.

1. Which show has attracted both positive and negative comments from reviewers?
2. Which show is broadcast in the morning?
3. Which show airs twice a year?
4. Which shows are available in more than 20 languages?
5. Which show has aired for more than forty years?
6. Which show might be enjoyed by a person who likes murder mysteries?



2 Pair Work



Create your own idea for a TV program. Decide on the kind of program and the title. Then write a brief description of the program.

3 Grammar



Direct and Indirect Objects

A direct object is a noun or pronoun that receives the action of a verb.

A direct object answers the question *what* or *who*.

John wrote **the poem**.

John likes **his new teacher**.

An indirect object tells us to or for *whom* the action is done.

There must be a direct object for there to be an indirect object.

John wrote **the poem** for *his mother*.

John read **the poem** to *the audience*.

If there is a preposition, the indirect object goes after the direct object.

She gave *the remote control* to **me**.

If there is no preposition, the indirect object goes before the direct object.

She gave **me** *the remote control*.

When the direct object is a pronoun, the pronoun goes before the indirect object.

She gave *it* to **me**.

To and For Before Indirect Objects

Use *to* if the indirect object is receiving something. Use *to* with these verbs: *bring, confess, give, hand, lend, offer, pass, pay, promise, read, sell, send, show, take, tell, and write*.

Will you pass *a pillow* **to me**?

Note: The preposition *to* is not used when the indirect object comes before the direct object.

Will you pass **me** *a pillow*?

Use *for* if the indirect object is benefiting from some kind of help. Use *for* with these verbs: *book, build, buy, cook, find, get, keep, leave, make, order, and reserve*.

My parents bought *a new TV* **for me**.

Note: The preposition *for* is not used when the indirect object comes before the direct object.

His parents are buying **him** *a new TV* for his graduation.

With some verbs, the indirect object always follows the direct object, and the preposition *for* cannot be omitted: *answer, cash, change, close, fix, open, prepare, pronounce, and translate*.

Can you please translate *the program* **for me**?

A. Complete the conversation with **for** or **to**.

Alex: What happened in last night's episode of *Fast and Safe*?

Omar: I recorded it (1) _____ you. It was great.

Alex: Tell me about it.

Omar: Well, Alan wrote an email (2) _____ Ahmed. In it, he confessed (3) _____ him that he had tampered with the engine of the car he was driving. Ahmed kept reading the email (4) _____ himself. He couldn't believe that Alan would do such a thing. Then Alan tried to make up for it. He got a fantastic car (5) _____ Ahmed to drive in this show. He bought a new helmet (6) _____ him. He even sent a limo (7) _____ Ahmed's house, to drive him to the studio.

Alex: What did Ahmed do?

Omar: Well, he was angry at first. Then he demanded that Alan make a public statement on the air and promise that he would never do anything like that (8) _____ him again.

3 Grammar

Direct and Indirect Objects

- Write this sentence on the board:

Jack sold the car.

Ask: **What did Jack sell?** (his car) Explain that in this sentence *the car* is the direct object of the verb *sell*.

- Then write these sentences on the board:

Jack sold the car to John.

Jack sold John the car.

Ask: **Who did Jack sell the car to?** (John) Explain that *John* is the indirect object. Point out the different positions of the indirect object, before or after the direct object, and the use of the preposition.

- Read the explanations and examples in the chart with the class.
- Working with the whole class, help students find more examples of sentences with indirect objects in the program descriptions on pages 54 and 55. Have them underline the direct objects once and the indirect objects twice.

To and For Before Indirect Objects

- Read the explanations and examples in the chart with the class. Write the following sentences on the board to show the difference between to and for.

Ali wrote a letter to Adel and told him about our trip.

Adel didn't have time to write, so Ali wrote the letter for him.

Ask: **In which sentence does Adel get a letter?**

(the first sentence) In the second sentence, Ali writes the letter for Adel as a favor.

Language Builder

Point out that when an indirect object is very short, just a name or a pronoun, it's more common to put it before the direct object. For example:

He told him the story.

However, when the indirect object is a long phrase, the indirect object is more likely to come after the direct object. For example:

He told the story to all of the people in the room.

A

- Have students read the conversation. Explain any unfamiliar words.
- Have students work individually to complete the sentences with *to* or *for*. Then have them compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers by having two students read the conversation, playing the roles of Alex and Omar. Have the other students listen and raise their hands if they disagree with any of the choices.

Answers

- for
- to
- to
- to
- for
- for
- to
- to

4 TV Around the World

B

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the examples. Then do the first sentence with the class as an example. Elicit the responses:
The comedian told the audience a joke.
The comedian told a joke to the audience.
- Have students work individually to write the sentences. Point out that they first need to decide which phrase begins the sentence. That phrase is not always given first.
- Check answers by having students write their sentences on the board.

Answers

1. The comedian told the audience a joke. / The comedian told a joke to the audience.
2. The talk show host poured the celebrity a glass of water. / The talk show host poured a glass of water for the celebrity.
3. The sitcom dad gave his wife his wallet. / The sitcom dad gave his wallet to his wife.
4. The cartoon mouse offered the cat his cheese. / The cartoon mouse offered his cheese to the cat.
5. The host passed an audience member the microphone. / The host passed the microphone to an audience member.
6. The judges offered the contestants advice. / The judges offered advice to the contestants.
7. The host offered the contestant another chance. / The host offered another chance to the contestant.
8. The chef made the studio audience a dessert. / The chef made a dessert for the studio audience.

C

- Focus students' attention on the photos. Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the first sentence of each story.
- Have students work in pairs. To begin, one student works on the poster story while the other works on the graduation story. Then they read both stories and work together to finish them. They should write at least five or six sentences for each story. Tell them that it isn't necessary to use direct and indirect objects in every sentence, but they should use them once or twice in each story.
- Ask a few pairs to read their stories to the class. Have them point out the sentences that have direct and indirect objects.

Workbook

Assign pages 38-40 for more practice with the grammar of the unit.



Teaching Tip

Find out about your students' hobbies and interests and use these topics in the classroom whenever possible. Encourage students to share information and details about these activities with the class.



Additional Activity

Arrange students in pairs. Give each pair eight to ten index cards or slips of paper. Have them write a sentence that uses a direct and indirect object (with or without a preposition). They copy the sentence onto the cards—one word on each card. Then have them mix up the cards and pass them to another pair. That pair tries to unscramble the cards and writes the complete sentence on a piece of paper. They then remix the cards and pass them to another pair and so on. After about five or six minutes, have students read the sentences they have written. Are they the same as those the original authors wrote?

fun facts

Many people assume that teens are watching less TV now because they spend more time doing things like playing video games and surfing the Internet. However, a recent study says that this isn't true. The study found that in the last 5 years, teens have been watching 6 percent more TV. On average, teens spend more than 104 hours a month watching TV. They spend an average of about 12 hours online.

B. Rearrange the words to create two sentences: one with the indirect object placed after the direct object, and another with the indirect object placed before the direct object.

💡 I sent / the TV schedule / John

I sent John the TV schedule.

I sent the TV schedule to John.

1. the comedian told / the audience / a joke
2. a glass of water / the talk show host poured / the celebrity
3. the sitcom dad gave / his wife / his wallet
4. his cheese / the cat / the cartoon mouse offered
5. the host passed / the microphone / an audience member
6. the judges offered / the contestants / advice
7. another chance / host offered / the contestant
8. the chef made / the studio audience / a dessert

C. Look at the pictures. Use your own ideas to complete the stories. Use direct and indirect objects.

💡 Jamal had spent weeks planning a poster for ecotourism in his country...

💡 Ahmed's parents were proud of his achievement and wanted to do something special for him...



4 Conversation



Asma: What are you watching?

Nura: That game show with the teams of cooks. You know, the one where contestants need to prepare a 4-course meal as a team, plate it, and serve it to the judges.

Asma: Why would anyone want to compete in this kind of show? What do they get out of it? I don't know how you can watch this stuff. It's boring!

Nura: I **get a kick out of** it. Look! He's going to decorate that dish with flowers.

Asma: I can't believe he's going to put flowers on a meat dish. That's crazy. Why don't we turn off the TV and do something else?

Nura: No way! Don't touch that **remote**!

Asma: It **bugs** me to watch this. They pretend to be top chefs. But I'm positive they won't be allowed to do more than fry a couple of eggs after the end of this show. And they also pretend to be **all** friendly with each other.

Nura: I don't know. Some of them seem to know what they're doing.

Asma: I'm telling you, that contestant, there, is waiting for a chance to show off. He doesn't care about his teammates. He's in it to win for himself.

Nura: Relax. It's just a TV show.

Asma: **C'mon.** We're wasting our time watching this stuff. Don't be such a **couch potato**. What do you say we go shopping?

Nura: **Nah.** There's another game show on right after this.

**Real Talk**

get a kick out of = enjoy

remote = remote control

bugs = annoys

all = very, completely

C'mon. = Come on.

couch potato = someone who watches too much TV

Nah. = No.

About the Conversation

1. Describe the TV show Nura is watching.
2. How does Asma feel about this program?
Give examples from the conversation.
3. Would you watch this program? Why or why not?

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Discuss a current TV or game show. Talk about what will happen next on the show and who will win. Use phrases for expressing certainty from the box.

Expressing Certainty

I'm sure/certain/positive that...

There's no question that...

It's obvious that...

I'm telling you that...

4 Conversation

- Briefly introduce the topic of reality shows. Do students watch them? If so, which ones do they watch? If not, why not? (Students will discuss this topic in more depth later, so keep this discussion short.)
- Play the audio. Have students listen to the conversation with their books closed.
- Play the audio again and have students listen and follow along in their books.

Real Talk

- Model the words and phrases for the students to repeat. Discuss some of the more idiomatic words and expressions. Point out that these are all informal expressions and that students shouldn't use them in formal situations. Ask who says each word or expression and why.

get a kick out of (Nura says this, meaning she has fun watching reality shows.)

bugs (Asma says this, meaning that the shows annoy her.) The expression probably comes from the feeling you get when an insect is flying around you.

Show off (Asma says this, meaning that the contestant tries to show how clever or skilled he is so that other people will admire him.)

couch potato (Asma says this, meaning that Nura spends too much time watching TV.) The expression compares the person to a vegetable, sitting on a couch and doing nothing.
- Have students practice the expressions with a partner. Write the following questions on the board and have students discuss them.

What do you get a kick out of?

What bugs you?

Have you met anyone who likes showing off?

Are you a couch potato?

About the Conversation

- Discuss question 1 with the whole class. Elicit information from several different students. Each student should add more detailed information, building on the answers of other students. If necessary, ask more detailed questions. For example:

Who are the contestants on the program? (a team of cooks)

What do the contestants do? (They need to prepare a 4-course meal as a team and serve it to the judges.)

What is one of the contestants waiting for? (He is waiting for a chance to show off.)
- Have students work with a partner to answer the rest of the questions. Call on volunteers to say their answers for the class.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- It is a game show on which a team of cooks need to prepare a meal and serve it to the judges.
- She doesn't like it. (What do they get out of it, It bugs me to watch this, etc.)
- Answers will vary.

Your Turn

- Ask a volunteer to read the directions aloud.
- Have students read the expressions in the box. Explain that they can use these phrases when they are very sure about something. Ask: **Which expression does Asma use in the conversation?** (I'm telling you...)
- Remind students of some of the game shows they mentioned before listening to the Conversation. Use a show of hands to find out who watches which programs. Try to pair up students who watch the same program. If some students don't watch game shows, have them talk about any other program with a continuing story, such as a crime drama or sitcom.
- Have students work in pairs to create their own conversation. Tell them to use at least one of the phrases for expressing certainty from the box, as well as a Real Talk expression.
- Have one or two pairs act out their conversation for the class.

5 Listening

- Ask students if they have ever seen any TV quiz shows. Tell them that they are going to listen to a conversation between the quiz show host and the contestant. Have them look at the chart so they know what they will listen for.
- Play the audio. Tell students to listen but not to write at this time.
- Play the audio again. Have students write their answers in the chart.
- Play the audio again to check answers.

Answers

Positive impact	Negative impact
fantastic trainer	a broken toe
in the best physical and mental shape	father in the hospital
wonderful, supportive family	a cold

Audioscript

Host: Good evening, and welcome to *Brainworks*. We'd like to begin tonight's program by chatting with Imad, who amazed us with his perfect answers last week. Imad, I want to congratulate you on making it to the semi-finals. How do you feel?

Imad: I feel absolutely fantastic. It's so exciting to have made it to the semi-finals.

Host: I hear you have a few extra challenges to deal with this week.

Imad: Yes, that's true. For one thing, my father fell and broke his arm. He's in the hospital now, so he's really on my mind. The other thing is that a few days ago I was building a bookshelf for my friend. He was passing me a hammer and unfortunately, he let go before I took the hammer. And now I have a broken toe. On top of it all, I woke up with a cold this morning! But I'm not going to let any of that stop me.

Host: Well, we're all very sorry you've had such a difficult week, but there's no question in my mind that you're going to overcome all your problems once you take your seat on the platform. You've had one spectacular win after another. How do you do it?

Imad: Well, I owe my success to a number of things. Above all, I have a fantastic trainer. Ismail is the best trainer anyone could have. For another thing, I'm in the best physical and mental shape of my life. That's so important when dealing with challenging tasks. But I've also had other advantages. I have a wonderful family that has been so supportive of me throughout this competition. I couldn't do it without them. Their thoughts give me energy and keep me going. I want to take a minute to say thank you to my family, and to wish my father a quick recovery.

Host: Wonderful! Well, tonight you are going to be answering the Top Master's questions. Do you think you'll be able to win again this week?

Imad: I'm sure I will. We've put in a lot of research and hard work, on top of years of study and preparation. We want to prove that hard work pays off. We hope it's going to be a good show for everyone!

6 Pronunciation

A

- Play the audio while students listen and read along in their books.
- Play the audio again. Have students listen and repeat, or speak along with the recording.

B

- Have students work individually. After several minutes put students in groups to practice reading the sentences aloud.

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Have students work individually to match the words with the definitions.

B

- Have students compare answers with a partner.

Answers

1. b 3. c 5. e 7. a
2. g 4. f 6. d

Workbook

Assign page 41 for additional reading practice.

Teaching Tip

Tell students that they should write only very brief notes while they are listening. The reason is that it's difficult to write and listen at the same time even in one's first language.

Additional Activity

Select a short paragraph from the Listening task and use it as a dictation activity.



Truth or Consequences was the first game show to air television. Its first episode aired in 1941 as an experimental broadcast.

5 Listening



Listen to the conversation between the quiz show host and the contestant. Then complete the chart.

Things that have a positive impact on Imad's performance

Things that have a negative impact on Imad's performance



6 Pronunciation



A. In casual speech, **going to** is often reduced to /gonna/, and **want to** is often reduced to /wanna/. Listen and practice.

1. I'm not **going to** let any of that stop me.
2. There's no question in my mind that you're **going to** overcome all your problems.
3. You're **going to** be answering questions.
4. I **want to** congratulate you.
5. I **want to** take a minute to say thank you.
6. We **want to** prove that hard work pays off..

B. Find **going to** and **want to** in the conversation you read on page 58. Underline them and practice reading the sentences aloud. Remember to shorten them to *gonna* and *wanna*.

7 Vocabulary Building



A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 60 and 61. Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. _____ evolution | a. having plenty of money and possessions |
| 2. _____ distinct | b. the gradual change and development of an idea |
| 3. _____ prototype | c. a model used to test a new machine, car, etc. |
| 4. _____ transmit | d. a very important event in the development of something |
| 5. _____ patent | e. obtain the right to make or sell a new invention or product |
| 6. _____ milestone | f. send out |
| 7. _____ affluence | g. clearly different |

B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

8 Reading



Before Reading

Television is popular around the world.

Why do you think it is so popular?

How much do you know about television?

A Brief Overview of the History of Television

Television was not invented overnight by a single person. The work of many people over a number of decades contributed to its evolution.

In the early days, two distinct schools of thought in technology influenced different researchers and the course of their investigation. The first one was based on the technology of Paul Nipkow's rotating disks that supported a mechanical television system, and the second one on an electronic television system that used a cathode-ray tube developed independently by two inventors, Campbell-Swinton and Rosing.

Paul Nipkow (1860-1940), who invented the Nipkow disk in 1884, was the first person to discover the scanning principle that allowed small portions of an image to be analyzed and transmitted. However, it is unclear whether Nipkow actually built a working prototype of his television system.

Electronic television is based on the development of the cathode-ray tube, which can still be found in modern television sets. Philo Farnsworth (1906-1971) - was the first inventor to transmit a television image, a dollar sign, using the dissector tube which is the basis of all current electronic televisions. The American engineer started experimenting with electricity when he was 12, when he built an electric motor and produced an electric washing machine. He was still in high school when he conceived of his ideas for television.

A lot of people wrongly believe that color television is a recent idea. In actual fact, the earliest proposal for color television was patented in 1904, while in 1925 Zworykin filed his proposal for an all-electronic color television system. Commercial broadcasting, however, started in the early 50s, a quarter of a century later.



John Baird (1888–1946) is a researcher who is best remembered for inventing a mechanical television system, based on Nipkow's scanning disk idea.

Actually, his work included a number of technological milestones in the history of television. He created the first televised pictures of objects in motion (1924), the first televised human face (1925), color television (1928), stereoscopic television, and television by infra-red light that were presented and demonstrated before the 1930s.

Vladimir Zworykin (1889-1982), the inventor of the iconoscope, a transmission device, as well as the kinescope, i.e. the cathode-ray tube, in 1929, was one of the first to demonstrate a television system with all the features of modern television, otherwise called "the tube." Most people in Britain that use the word *tube* to refer to television, fail to make the connection between the television set and the cathode-ray tube. Nor do people stop and think about the meaning of the word television, which refers to the transmission of images over a distance. In 1929 Zworykin became the director of electronic research at Radio Corporation of America (RCA), and was later promoted to vice-president in 1947. Zworykin invented many devices including the scintillation counter, a device for measuring radioactivity. He held more than eighty patents and received numerous awards for his work.

Louis W. Parker patented the "intercarrier sound system" in 1948, which is now used in all television receivers in the world. Without it, televisions would probably have been too costly for most people.

The plasma display monitor was invented in July 1964 by professors Bitzer and Slotow and their graduate student Robert Wilson. However, successful plasma television only became feasible later, after the

8 Reading

- Discuss the **Before Reading** questions with the whole class. Elicit several reasons for the popularity of television, what they know about television, and make notes on the board.
- Play the audio. Ask students to listen and read along in their books.
- Refer students back to the notes on the board. Were any of their ideas mentioned in the article?

READING STRATEGY Main ideas and examples

- Explain that one common way of organizing an article is to present several main ideas, each in its own paragraph. A paragraph often (but not always) begins by stating the main idea and then supports the idea with examples.
- Have students read paragraphs 4, 5, 6, and 7 of the article again. (Paragraph 4 starts with *Electronic television is based on the development of the cathode-ray tube*) Have them underline the sentence in each paragraph that expresses the main idea. Then have them compare their underlined sentences with a partner.
- Discuss the sentences students underlined with the whole class. Ask students to say what examples the article gives to support each one. Explain that marking a text like this is a good study strategy. It makes it easy to review the main ideas at a glance when studying for a test.

Main idea sentences

paragraph 4

Philo Farnsworth (1906-1971) was the first inventor to transmit a television image, a dollar sign, using the dissector tube which is the basis of all current electronic televisions.

paragraph 5

In actual fact, the earliest proposal for color television was patented in 1904 (The second sentence explains the first one.)

paragraph 6

John Baird (1888–1946) is a researcher who is best remembered for inventing a mechanical television system, based on Nipkow's scanning disk idea.

paragraph 7

Vladimir Zworykin, the inventor of the kinescope, ...

- If there is time, use the article for additional vocabulary practice. Explain that it is often possible to guess the meaning of a word by looking at the context, or the sentences around the word.
- Have students work with a partner. They find the words in the article and, without using a dictionary, they use context to write definitions for the words. If they find writing a definition difficult, you might also ask them to write sentences using the word or give examples of the words.

4 TV Around the World

After Reading

- Have students work in groups of three to ask and answer the questions. Assign each student in the group two questions to ask. The student asks the questions and then elicits answers from each of the other students.
- As students are working, go around and check answers to the questions.
- Discuss question 6 with the whole class. What do students think about the future of reality TV?

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- The two main schools of thought were: Paul Nipkow's rotating disks and a cathode-ray tube developed independently by, Campbell-Swinton and Rosing.
- He transmitted a dollar sign. He used a dissector tube.
- The earliest proposal for color television was patented in 1904.
- Because people fail to make the connection between the television set and the cathode-ray tube.
- He made televisions cost-effective.
- Answers will vary.

9 Speaking

- Have students in groups. Tell them they are going to talk about their favorite TV shows. Focus their attention on the chart. Have them compare their notes and decide which are the popular TV shows.
- After several minutes, when students have finished, as a class, have them find out about the other groups and compare their findings.

Workbook

Assign pages 42-43 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Teaching Tip

When students are working with new vocabulary, encourage them to define the words and think of examples in English rather than just translating the word into their first language.

Additional Activity

Do a cloze activity. Write on the board or make copies of one paragraph from the reading with every fourth or fifth word deleted. Then with books closed, have students work with a partner to fill in the missing words. Doing this gives students practice dealing with an interesting mix of content and function words.

Project: TV Guides

Have students work in groups of four to create a "Recommended Program Guide" for their classmates. The group chooses four programs that will be on TV in the following week. They write a brief description of each program, including the day, time, and channel on which it will appear. They mount all the descriptions on a piece of poster board and illustrate it with drawings or pictures cut out of magazines. Put the posters up around the classroom so that groups can read each other's recommendations. Follow up during the week to see how many students actually watched the programs.



Reality-based entertainment has been around for a while. One of the first examples is a 1947 radio show called *Candid Microphone*. The program became the TV show *Candid Camera* in 1948. Both shows were based on the idea of playing practical jokes on unsuspecting people and recording or filming it with a hidden camera or recorder. At the end, when the joke was revealed, they would say, "Smile! You're on Candid Camera." The show continued to run, off and on, until 2004.

development of digital and other technologies. A factor that delayed the commercial development of plasma display was connected with LCD or liquid crystal displays which made flat screen television possible. This minimized one of the advantages of plasma television in terms of a flat screen with an improved image. So it has taken a lot longer for plasma display to become more widely acceptable and accessible. Until recently, a plasma television screen was regarded, to some extent, as a symbol of affluence or status along with other possessions.

Now a new development is affecting

communication and media further, namely that of web or Internet television. When Internet access is available along with adequate hardware, more and more viewers appear to be switching over to their laptops or desktops to watch films and other programs. Television sets are connected, allowing access to digital channels. The key word seems to be access. It is quick access and options that determine the popularity and, consequently, the commercial success of a medium. Television has so far been fairly well-established; it remains to be seen how digital technology will affect its evolution in the future.

After Reading

Answer the questions.

1. Explain what the two main schools of thought were in the early days.
2. How did Philo Farnsworth transmit an image? What did he use?
3. How old is the concept of color TV?
4. Why is television called “the tube” by some people?
5. How did Parker’s system affect developments?
6. Read the text again. Find each inventor’s name, the name of his invention, and the approximate year. Write the information in the chart along with the effect that each invention had on the evolution of television.

Year	Inventor	Invention	Effects

9 Speaking



1. Make a list of your favorite TV shows and why you like them.
2. Talk about TV shows in groups and use the chart to make notes. Compare your lists and decide which shows are popular within your group.
3. Use the chart to find out about the rest of the groups in class and make notes. Organize and edit your notes in your groups. Compare findings in class.

Questions	Group answers	Class answers
Which TV shows are the most popular among your friends?		
Why are these shows popular with your friends?		
What do you like about these shows?		
What do you dislike about these shows?		

10 Writing



A. Consider the questions below and discuss with a partner:

1. What genre of TV films do you like to watch? Do you prefer action films, science fiction, fantasy, comedy or drama?
2. Do you ever need to summarize the plot of a TV film for a friend? Why?
3. What information do you include in your summary?
What information do you leave out? Why?
4. Read the review of a TV film below and find out the following:
 - What is the name of the TV film?
 - What genre does it belong to?
 - Which actors star in the TV film?
 - What information can you find about the characters, the setting and the plot?
 - How does this TV film compare to other TV films of a similar genre? How does it compare with the book?
 - Does the writer of the review recommend this TV film? Why? Why not?
5. Which tenses/verb forms are used more? Could they be different?
6. Are there any passive forms? Why? Why not?
7. Are there any paragraphs? Why? Why not?

A terrifying adventure on water

Moby Dick (1956), directed by John Huston and starring Gregory Peck, Richard Basehart and Leo Genn, is a TV fantasy film adapted from the bestselling novel by Herman Melville.

The story takes place in 19th century England on a whaling ship. The captain of the ship is Captain Ahab. Ahab has a fantastic story to tell about a "great white whale" which mutilated his body and almost killed him on a previous voyage. Now the captain leads his men back into the sea to take revenge. However, Ahab becomes so obsessed with vengeance that he makes some very bad decisions.

The TV film takes us on a grand adventure over the waves as Captain Ahab and his crew



seeks out the great sea mammal. As Ahab becomes more and more consumed by hatred, his doomed men are flung into dangerous situations. Does Captain Ahab eventually find the big whale? To find out you will have to watch the film!

If you choose to watch one film version of the novel *Moby Dick*, you should choose this 1956 version. The acting is good, it is well-directed and the use of color and imagery is superb. I think it is far superior to more recently released TV film versions.

Everyone who read the book and those who enjoy adventure and tales of great battles between man and beast should see this TV film. I definitely recommend it as one of the best of our times. It is staggeringly good.

10 Writing

A

- Direct students' attention to the picture. Discuss what they see. Elicit the answer: A poster advertising the TV film 'Moby Dick.'
- Have students read the questions for 1. Elicit the genre of TV film they watch. Ask them to work in pairs and discuss their preferences.
- Read the directions for 2 and 3 with the class. Have students work in pairs discussing the questions. Call on volunteers to present their answers for the class.
- Have students read directions for 4. Allow time for them to read the review and answer the questions in pairs. Call on students to report their answers in class.

Answers

- Moby Dick
- Adventure
- Gregory Peck, Richard Badehart and Leo Genn
- Characters: Captain Ahab and the ship's crew; a whale
Setting: 19th century England; on a whaling ship; a sea voyage
Plot: Captain Ahab sets out a sea voyage to find a great whale and take revenge
- The 1956 version is better than other versions; It compares favorably with the book.
- The writer recommends the TV film to people who enjoy adventure stories set at sea.
- Play the audio and have students listen and check their answers.
- Call on pairs to report for the class. Hold a class discussion on examples of other reviews they have read before. Ask whether book or TV film reviews they have read follow a similar format to the one on page 62.
- Call on a volunteer to read the directions for 5, 6 and 7 aloud for the class. Have students work individually to answer the questions. Tell them to highlight items and then identify forms. Have them compare with a partner.

Answers

- Present tenses. Not really because they are used to describe/present the story.
- Passive forms are used to describe who directed and starred in the TV film.
- Yes, there are paragraphs. Each paragraph has a particular focus. Paragraph 1 describes who directed and starred in the TV film. Paragraph 2 describes the characters, setting and plot. Paragraph 3 states the writer's opinion of the TV film. Paragraph 4 states whether the writer recommends the TV film or not.
- Call on students to report their answers and have a class discussion on other books or TV films that students have read or watched.

B

- Organize students in groups and have them read the directions for 1. Have them study the chart, discuss a book they have all recently read and complete the chart with information about the book
- Have students use their notes to present three key events in the plot.
- In groups, students should exchange their outlines, read and comment before returning them for editing.
- Circulate and monitor; help when necessary.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Elicit what they know about review writing. Tell them that the guidelines provide information about how to organize their information about a book or TV film in order to write a review.
- Go through the guidelines with the students.
- Have students write the first draft of their review. Ask them to help each other edit their texts.
- Post the reviews on the board or the wall for the class to read later and make comments on post- its.
- Ask students to comment on whether they would like to read the books reviewed. Ask why/why not?

Workbook

Assign page 44 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.



Additional Activity

Organize students into groups and hand out jumbled reviews of books or TV films. Ask students to work together to put the reviews back in order according to the order of information given in each paragraph.

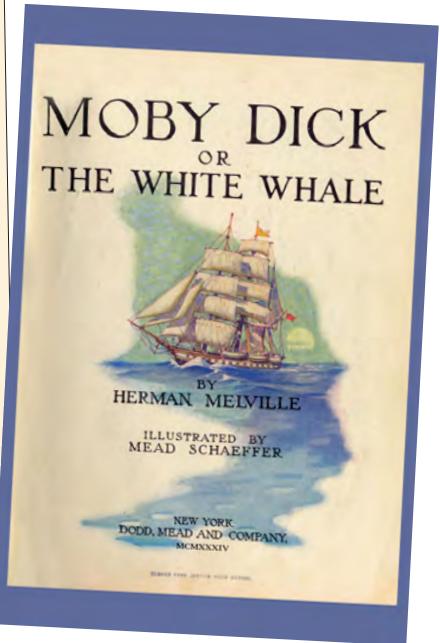


Teaching Tip

Reviews are easy to write as reviews often follow a similar organization in terms of the order of information. A key feature is that the ending to a book or TV film is never given away in a review. Point out that we use descriptive language in reviews when describing characters and the setting in the same way as we do for stories.

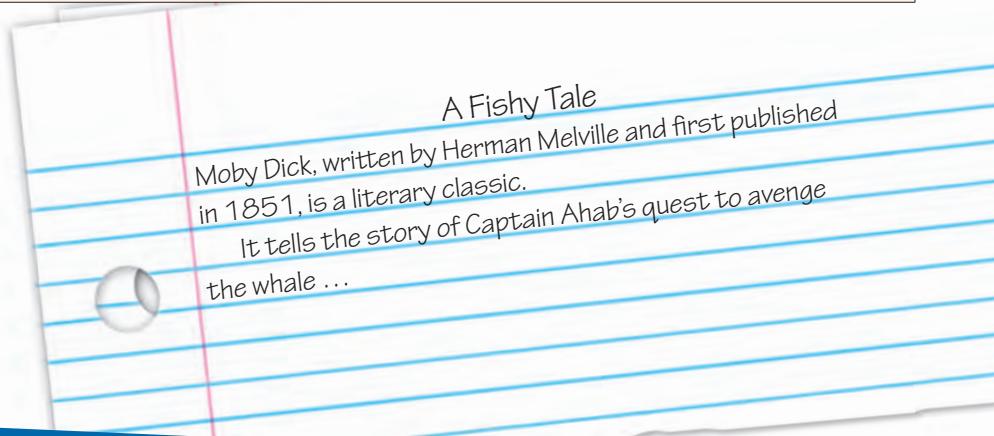
- B. 1.** Think of a book you have recently read. Make some notes in the chart below.

Title of book:	
Author:	
Fiction / non-fiction / genre:	
Information about the characters, setting, plot, etc.:	
Comparison and contrast (this book vs. other books):	
Would you recommend it? Who should read the book? Who would like it and why?	



- 2.** Use the organizer to outline the major 3 key events in the plot (but do not give away the ending).
3. Write your book review.

	Information
First Event	
Second Event	
Third Event	



Writing Corner

When you write a book review:

- think about who will read it (audience) and why they will read it (purpose).
- begin with the title, genre and author.
- summarize the main characters and the plot. Give three or four key events.
- never give away the ending of the story.
- say what was enjoyable or not enjoyable about the book. Use adjectives: interesting, frightening, brilliant, amazing, boring, and so on.
- finish by saying who you would recommend the book to and say why.

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Articles

We use the indefinite article *a/an* before singular nouns.

We use *a* before words that begin with a consonant sound: **a** TV show, **a** chef, **a** festival

We use *an* before words that begin with a vowel sound: **an** English class, **an** aunt, **an** uncle

We use the definite article *the* before singular and plural nouns:

the student

the students

the mango

the mangoes

Use *the* for objects that are one of a kind:

the Earth

the sun

the moon

the stars

the sky

the sea

Use *the* with the names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges, deserts, groups of states:

the Red Sea

the Amazon

the Eiffel Tower

the Arabian Desert

the Alps

the United States

Use no article before the names of days, months, people, streets, cities, countries, continents, mountains and islands:

Fahd is my brother.

I live on Main Street.

He's in Dubai on vacation.

She went to Europe with her parents.

Mount Olympus is in Greece.

The festival starts in May.

- A.** Read the two extracts from the TV show 'Festivals in and around Saudi Arabia.' Complete the paragraphs with *a*, *an*, *the*, or no article (-).

TV show host: When did you first hear about the Jazan Mango festival?

Visitor: Well, I first heard about (1) _____ Jazan Mango Festival three years ago from (2) _____ business colleague in (3) _____ Dubai. He told me that every year in (4) _____ May, Jazan holds (5) _____ Mango Festival to coincide with the harvest of the mango. So, I decided to come and see for myself, and I wasn't disappointed! (6) _____ festival is very popular and many people attend, including investors in agricultural products and families. There is lots of entertainment ...



TV show host: Every year in (7) _____ Saudi Arabia, (8) _____ Janadriyah national heritage and culture festival opens with much excitement and high expectations. Many people from all over the country and from abroad attend. The Janadriyah festival takes place in (9) _____ village near (10) _____ Riyadh, and it is normally held between (11) _____ November and (12) _____ March when the heat is less extreme. It lasts for two weeks. The festival celebrates symbols of Saudi identity. There are (13) _____ camel and horse races, displays of regional costumes, cuisines, and crafts such as carpet-weaving, and pottery. There are donkey rides for (14) _____ children ...



- B.** Choose one of the festivals in exercise A and complete the extract with your own ideas. Share your ideas with your classmates.

11 Form, Meaning and Function

Articles

- Write the words on the board and say them out loud: *a TV* and *an English class*. Show students how it's easier to say 'an English class' with the /n/ sound in *an*.
- Go over the explanation and other examples of *a* and *an* in the presentation.
- Explain that the definite article *the* comes before singular and plural nouns: *the student* and *the students*.
- Tell students we use *the* for specific objects or people that have already been introduced or that are already known. For example,
He is an English teacher. The English teacher is very knowledgeable about other cultures.
- Explain that we do not use *the* with plural nouns when talking in general. For example, *Teachers work at schools*. Use *the* for objects that are one of a kind. For example, *the Earth, the sun, the moon*, and so on.
- Use the with the names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges, deserts, groups of states, and monuments. For example, *the Red Sea, the Amazon, the Eiffel Tower, the Arabian Desert, the Alps, the United Arab Emirates*.
- Do not use *the* with proper names, possessive adjectives, months, days of the week, meals, games, sports, or with the words *home, school, work, business, and vacation* when used for their purpose. For example. *Fahd is my brother. He is in Dubai on business.*

A

- Tell students they are going to read about two festivals in Saudi Arabia. Ask them to look at the pictures and guess the festivals. Elicit or give the names of the two festivals (the Jazan Mango festival and the Janadriyah national heritage and culture festival).
- Before students read the texts in the Student Book, elicit as much information as you can from students about the festival write it on the board.
- Ask students to read the two paragraphs and ignore the gaps. They should see if any of their ideas listed on the board are mentioned in the texts.
- Ask students to feed back their answers and ask for any new information they found out from reading the paragraphs.

- Tell students to complete the exercise alone and then compare their answers in pairs.
- Call on volunteers to read out the completed texts.

Answers

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. the | 5. the | 9. the | 13. – |
| 2. a | 6. The | 10. – | 14. the |
| 3. – | 7. – | 11. – | |
| 4. – | 8. – | 12. – | |

B

- Using the ideas already written on the board in exercise A, ask students to choose one of the festivals and give some more information.
- Ask students to do this exercise alone before comparing their answers in groups.

Answers

Students' own answers.

Additional Activity

Ask students to work in pairs or groups of three. Each student should write the name of another festival on a piece of paper and then fold the paper so that their partner or group members do not see what they have written. Students then try to guess each other's festivals by taking it in turns to ask yes/no questions about each other's festivals.



Jazan Province includes the Farasan Islands in the Red Sea: a group of 84 islands. The main island of Farasan is about 50 km off the coast of Jazan. Ferry service to the island is free twice a day. The islands are a protected nature reserve and home to the endangered Arabian gazelle and many species of migratory birds. Farasan Island is also known for its beautiful beaches and several archaeological sites of Islamic heritage.

Adjective Clauses and Relative Pronouns

- Read through the information in the presentation and ask students to identify the noun given in the example sentence: The language that he/she speaks at home is Arabic. (The noun is 'the language.') Ask: *Which language?* (Arabic)
- Elicit that *who* is used with people (The woman *who* is crossing the street...); *which* is used with things (The language *which* she speaks...); and *that* can be used with people or things.
- Explain that the relative pronoun *that* can only substitute *which* or *who* in a defining relative clause or adjective clause (ie with no commas). It is used to answer the questions: *Which one?* or *Who?*

Relative Pronouns as Subjects of Adjective Clauses

- Read through the information given in the presentation and ask students to identify the subject in the example sentence: I am someone who loves watching quiz shows on TV. (The subject is 'I'.)
- Write on the board the following question stem and ask students to complete orally:
I am someone who
- Tell students to listen carefully to each other and call on volunteers to recall as many of their classmates' answers as possible. For example,
Aisha is someone who; Maryam is someone who... and so on.

Relative Pronouns as Objects of Adjective Clauses

- Read through the information given in the presentation and ask students to identify the object in the example sentence: English is a language (that) many people find easy to learn. (The object is 'English'.)
- Explain that when the object is placed at the beginning of the sentence and is defined, we can omit the relative pronoun. For example,
Arabic is a language (that/which) many people speak.
My mother is the person (that/who[m]) I admire most.
Hard work is the reason (that/which) many people attribute to success.

- Write on the board the following ask students to copy them into their notebooks and complete in their own way:

_____ is the animal _____.

_____ is the person _____.

_____ is the reason _____.

C

- Ask students to complete the statements 1 to 10 in three minutes. Have students close their books and ask students at random: *What's a quiz show host?* *What's a crime drama?*
- Point out that the name of the TV quiz is Define It! For this reason students must give a definition and use a relative pronoun. There are no commas.

Answers

Answers will vary. Possible answers.

1. A quiz show host is a person who/that asks questions.
2. A crime drama is a show which/that tells a story about crime.
3. A microphone is something which/that amplifies the sound of people's voices.
4. A daytime series is a program which/that appears every day on TV during the day.
5. A TV documentary is a program which/that investigates and gives facts about the natural world or science.
6. A forensic scientist is a person who/that gathers evidence from a crime scene.
7. A poem is something which/that is written in a creative way.
8. A remote control is something which/that is used to change the TV station.
9. The Mango Festival in Jazan is an event which/that is popular with many people around the world.
10. August is the month which/that follows July.

Workbook

Assign pages 45-46 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.

Teaching Tip

If possible, arrange the seats in your classroom so that students are not sitting in straight rows facing the front of the room. The purpose of learning a language is communication. It is easier for students to communicate with you and each other if they are facing each other.

Adjective Clauses and Relative Pronouns

An adjective clause is a dependent clause that describes or gives information about the noun that comes before it.

The *language* **that he/she speaks at home** is Arabic.

Relative pronouns relate clauses to nouns in adjective clauses. Use the relative pronoun *who* for people, and *which* and *that* for things.

Note: The relative pronoun *that* can also be used when talking about people in general. However, when a particular person is being referred to, *who* is preferred.

Relative Pronouns as Subjects of Adjective Clauses

Relative pronouns can be the subject of an adjective clause. Relative pronouns that are followed by a verb are subject pronouns. Subject pronouns must always be included.

I am someone **who** loves watching quiz shows on TV.

Relative Pronouns as Objects of Adjective Clauses

Relative pronouns can also be the object of an adjective clause. Relative pronouns that are followed by a noun or pronoun are object pronouns. Object pronouns can be omitted.

English is a language **(that)** many people find easy to learn.

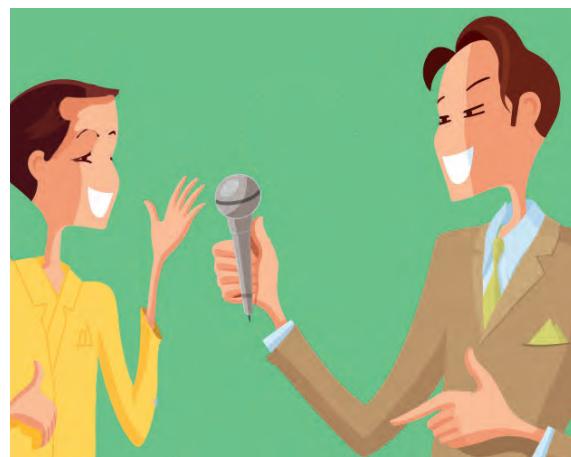
Note: *Whom* is considered more correct than *who* when used as the object of an adjective clause. However, *whom* is very formal. In casual speech, either *who* is used or the relative pronoun is simply left out.

The TV personality **(who[m])** I like best hosts Jeopardy! every Saturday night.

C. Complete the quiz answers asked in the TV show 'Define it!'

TV quiz show host: You have 3 minutes to define all the items on your card. Contestants, are you ready? Then let's begin ...

1. A quiz show host is a person _____.
2. A crime drama is a show _____.
3. A microphone is something _____.
4. A daytime series is a program _____.
5. A TV documentary is a program _____.
6. A forensic scientist is a person _____.
7. A poem is something _____.
8. A remote control is something _____.
9. The Mango Festival in Jazan is an event _____.
10. August is the month _____.



4 TV Around the World

12 Project

1. Prepare a five minute episode for a TV show you would like to produce. Work in groups.
2. Decide on:
 - the type of program
 - the roles/jobs of the people involved
 - the episode and what happens in it, i.e. events.
3. Prepare the script, i.e. what people will be saying. Prepare cards for each person that needs to speak in your film/video.
4. Complete the chart with information and details about 5 minutes of your episode.
5. Research and find ideas and samples to help you.
6. Find or make the props you will need, e.g. an umbrella, sunglasses, a scarf, etc.
7. Assign these roles/tasks to members of your group:
 - cameraman
 - director
 - actors, contestants, host, interviewer, etc.
8. Do a trial run. Make changes if necessary.
9. Film 5 minutes of your episode.



Timing	Who is in front of the camera/in the frame?	Where is the person/are the people?	What is the person/are the people saying?	What is the person/are the people doing?	Materials/props needed
1 st minute					
2 nd minute					
3 rd minute					
4 th minute					
5 th minute					

12 Project



- Organize students in groups. Tell them that they are going to write and produce a TV episode.
- Read directions 1 and 2 with the class. Ask groups to discuss and decide on the type of program that they would like to produce, the roles of the people involved and the events that transpire in about 5 minutes of the episode.
- Allow time for groups to discuss and make notes. Call on individual students from each group to report in class.
- Have students read 3, 4, 5. Allow them to research and find relevant information if there is access to the Internet or give them copies of material that you downloaded yourself, to help them.
- Direct students to the chart and ask them to use it in order to make very brief abbreviated notes or copy it on a sheet of paper with more writing space.
- Ask students to read 6 and plan props. You can, if you wish, bring in some objects and/or materials that can be used to make props. For example, sunglasses, bags, scarves, an umbrella, a camera etc.
- Read directions for 7, 8 and 9. Have students assign roles and tasks to members of their group. Explain that they have to think of every single detail. Use questions like these to help them:

Where will each person stand?

What will they be looking at?

Who else is going to be in the scene? Is he/she going to enter the frame/scene halfway through or from the beginning?

How are the actors supposed to deliver their lines? What kind of emotions are involved?

What kind of props are going to be used?

What will the background be?

What is the setting? What is the set going to look like?

- Let groups organize themselves and get ready to rehearse. Encourage the actors to rehearse their lines. When they are ready allow each group to take turns rehearsing in class. The rest of the groups watch and make suggestions for improvement.
- Have more trial runs if necessary and then have students act out the episode and film it.
- Watch the filmed episodes and evaluate them. Use the following criteria:

Plot (interesting, boring, fairly interesting, amazing etc.)

Script (clever, too long, too short, natural, artificial, too predictable, funny, etc.)

Characters (realistic, interesting, strong, funny, original etc.)

Acting very good, good, average, needs improvement)

Direction (very good, clever, creative, original, uninspiring, etc.)

Setting (minimal but realistic, could be improved, inventive, original)

Filming (good frames, unstable, fuzzy, very focused, brilliant)

Additional Activity

Have students choose the episodes they like best and modify them in order to make them part of the same series. Act out and film again. Set up an ongoing project with the class. Have one group of students on a weekly or biweekly basis, write and present a new episode that follows on from the previous one. Have the rest of the class view and evaluate. Collect all the materials and films and create an electronic portfolio for the class.

Teaching Tip

When assigning roles and tasks before filming, students sometimes get impatient and do not assign tasks to the right people. If there are quieter and less confident students in your class find out what their strengths are, for example, drawing, photography and assign tasks accordingly. Put creative but quieter students behind the camera and outgoing students in front of it.

13 Self Reflection



- Brainstorm TV Around the World. Write the title on the board and elicit as many ideas and words as possible from the class. Call on a volunteer to list the words on the board.
- Have students scan pages 54 and 55. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked in this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:
**Do you like any of the programs advertized?
Which? Why? Why not?**
What is your dream program that you think would be an instant success? Describe it briefly. Why would it be an instant success?
- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 56, 57, ask them some questions. For example:
What would you say to your partner if you needed a pen?
What would you say to a member of the family if you couldn't reach the salad during dinner?
What did your friend say when you said: "What are you doing in Aisha's jacket?"

Answers

- Can you lend me a pen? / Can I have your pen for a minute?
Can you give me your pen?
- Can you pass me the salad please?
- She gave it to me.
- Have volunteers answer the questions. Elicit more questions and answers from pairs of students after you give them a couple of minutes to think.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.
- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 58, 59. Call on volunteers to say what the conversation is about in this lesson and which expressions they remember.
- Have students say what they remember from this section and ask them to make notes in the chart.
- Write the title of the reading on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember. Call on volunteers to list as much as possible on the board.

- Organize students in pairs and ask them to answer as quickly as they can to questions like these:

Which were the two distinct schools of thought in the early days of television?

What is electronic television based on?

How recent an invention is colored television?

What do you know about the plasma display monitor?

- Ask students what they remember from the discussion on popular TV shows.
- Have students complete their Self Reflection charts as before about likes, dislikes and things they found easy or difficult.
- Before directing students to 10 Writing ask them to say what they know/remember about cooking shows on television. Ask them if they have ever watched a game show that involved cooking.
- Have students scan pages 62 and 63 and make notes as before.
- Direct students to 12 Project page and hold a discussion about what they found more or less useful and more or less interesting. Discuss what they did. Elicit answers from the students and ask them if they think it was beneficial. List some aspects of project work on the board. For example:

Personalization

Creativity

Natural language use

Focus on meaning

Research/ collecting information

Using other knowledge

- Have students reflect on the work they did with their group and evaluate the activity. Identify the aspect that they think they fulfilled.
- Allow time for students to make notes on the project section individually. Then have them check with a partner.
- Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.
- Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 4:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 4:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 4:

Unit 4 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
discuss types of TV programs			
express and explain preferences			
express certainty			
use direct and indirect objects			
use <i>to</i> and <i>for</i> before indirect objects			
talk about festivals and use articles			
use relative pronouns as subjects			
use relative pronouns as objects			

My five favorite new words from Unit 4:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 4:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

5 Working 9 to 5

Each person is going to tell us a little bit about what their jobs entail. Can you guess what their jobs are?

1 Listen and Discuss



1. Name a few jobs that you think would be very rewarding. Explain.
2. Name a few jobs that you think would not be satisfying at all. Explain.
3. Read the job descriptions and match them with the photos.



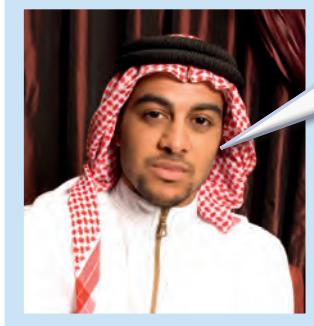
I often need to spend quite a lot of time researching the natural resources and materials of an area before I can design and start construction. I specialize in environmentally friendly buildings which utilize alternative sources of energy such as solar energy. Ahmed Badri - Profession: _____

I'll be the first to admit that I drive dangerously. Yet I've never gotten a ticket. No police officer has ever even told me, "I want you to slow down." Even though I spend a lot of time driving, I never really arrive at a destination.

Aston Sena - Profession: _____

I am a keen and respectful observer of nature. I often spend a lot of time in the lab, but I enjoy fieldwork more. It is really rewarding to observe animals in their natural habitat and collect information. It helps us determine the status of the species; if it's endangered or not.

Khaled Hussain - Profession: _____



I have recently been promoted and have a better income. I am now responsible for the surgical ward and I need to be on the job 24 hours a day, six to seven days a week. I need to make sure records are kept on treatment and progress, and advise doctors about patients' conditions. I also have to check and monitor supplies, equipment, materials, and medicine.

Fahd Khamis - Profession: _____

I spend a lot of time cutting and sewing, but I don't work with fabric. The people I work for never see me do my work. In fact, they are often asleep when I'm at work. But I have no doubt that they appreciate what I do. I certainly get a great deal of satisfaction from my job.

Walter Lee - Profession: _____

When I am on night shift, I feel that I need to be more alert and keep an eye on the screen and my instruments at all times. I handle pressure well and I can cooperate with pilots effectively during emergencies. I have always been interested in aviation and electronics.

Ahmed Al Otaibi - Profession: _____



Unit Goals

Vocabulary

Jobs
Job requirements
and responsibilities

Functions

Talk about jobs
Discuss job
requirements and
responsibilities
Ask for favors

Grammar

The Subjunctive
I'd Like You + Infinitive
I Want You + Infinitive

Listening

Listen for specific
information about
a survey on
job satisfaction

Pronunciation

Syllable stress on
words ending with
-tion, -cian, -sion

Reading

You Do What
For a Living?

Writing

Write about an unusual
job

Form, Meaning and Function

Tag Questions
Ask for Information and
Make Requests
Express Obligation and
Necessity

- Pause after each person describes his or her job and have students talk with their partner and write down any guesses they have about the person's job.
- Have students open their books. Give them about five minutes to read the job descriptions. Tell them not to look at page 69. Then they review their guesses with their partner.
- Ask a few pairs to share their guesses with the class. Then ask if anyone has any different ideas. Write students' ideas on the board.
- Have students look at the photos on page 57 and match them with the job descriptions. Review students' original guesses. Were any of them correct?

Answers

Aston Sena: race car driver

Ahmed Badri: engineer

Khaled Hussain: zoologist

Walter Lee: surgeon

Ahmed Al Otaibi: air traffic controller

Fahad Khamis: nurse

- As an extension and to provide additional vocabulary practice, do the following activity. Arrange students in pairs. Give each pair one of the following groups of words to work with. Try to have the same number of pairs work with Group A and Group B.

Group A: destination, habitat, observer

Group B: demand, fabric, sewing

- With their partner, students practice explaining the meaning of each word using only English and giving examples.
- Combine pairs into groups of four, so that each group has one pair that worked with Group A and one that worked with Group B. Students then explain the words to each other.
- Review the words with the class. Possible explanations include:

destination = the place where a person is going

habitat = the natural environment where an animal or plant lives or grows

observer = a person who sees or notices someone or something

monitor = to carefully watch or check a situation or something that changes

fabric = cloth; material that most clothes are made of

sewing = action of putting pieces of fabric together or fixing clothes with a needle and thread (A surgeon cuts and sews a person's body.)

Warm Up

With books closed, ask students the first two introductory questions on this page. Have them name jobs and say why they think they are rewarding or not satisfying. Draw a two-column chart with the headings **Rewarding** and **Unsatisfying** on the board. As students mention jobs, write them in the appropriate column. If students disagree as to whether a job is rewarding or unsatisfying, write it in both columns.

1 Listen and Discuss

- With books closed, tell students that they are going to hear people describing their jobs. The students will listen and try to guess the jobs.
- ▶ Play the audio. Have students listen with their books closed.
- ▶ Arrange students in pairs. Play the audio again. Have students listen again with their books closed.

5 Working 9 to 5

Quick Check

A

- Have students look at the list of words and find each word in the job descriptions on page 68.
- Have students work individually to match the words and the definitions.
- Check answers by having students read aloud the words and the definitions.
- To give students additional practice with the words, ask questions, such as the following:

Why does Walter Lee get satisfaction from his job?

(He helps sick people feel better.)

What is a person's marital status? (whether they are single, married, or divorced)

What's another way of asking what a job entails?

(What does your job involve? or, What do you do in your job?)

Why do people appreciate Walter Lee's work?

(He helps them get well.)

Do you agree that asking about a person's income is a personal question?

Do you feel that the students in your class cooperate well with each other? Why should students be respectful of each other's ideas?

Answers

- d
- e
- f
- g
- b
- a
- c

B

- Have students work with a partner to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by having pairs read a question and the answer. Ask students which, if any, of these jobs they would like to have and why.

Answers

- air traffic controller
- surgeon
- zoologist
- nurse
- race car driver

2 Pair Work

- Have students work with a partner to write descriptions for two or three jobs. Tell them they should try to think of some unusual jobs, but they should be sure that the jobs really exist.
- Go around the class as students are working and help as needed. Have students ask you for any vocabulary they may need, or quietly suggest jobs they can describe if they're finding it hard to come up with ideas.
- Have pairs present their job descriptions to the class or to a group for their classmates to guess the jobs.

Workbook

Assign page 47 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.

Teaching Tip

Turning an activity into a game from time to time is a good idea. Learning is more memorable when it's associated with something that is enjoyable.

Additional Activity

Play *What's My Job?* Start off by telling students that you have an unusual job (an imaginary one). Students have to guess what it is by asking yes/no questions. For example: *Do you work indoors? Do you work in an office? Do you work with animals?* Set a limit of 10 to 15 questions. If students can't guess in that time, tell them the answer. After students guess your job (or you say the answer), continue the game by having a student think of an imaginary job for classmates to guess.



surgeon



zoologist



nurse



race car driver



engineer



air traffic controller

Quick Check

A. Vocabulary. Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. _____ satisfaction | a. to work together well |
| 2. _____ status | b. money received or earned |
| 3. _____ entail | c. polite, showing consideration |
| 4. _____ appreciate | d. feeling of contentment |
| 5. _____ income | e. state or condition |
| 6. _____ cooperate | f. to involve or require |
| 7. _____ respectful | g. to be grateful for |

B. Comprehension. Name the job or jobs.

1. Which job requires that the person be willing to accept responsibility?
2. Which jobs require a medical degree?
3. Which job requires a person who likes nature?
4. Which job requires the person have kindness and consideration?
5. Which job requires the person not be scared of taking risks?

2 Pair Work

With a partner, create your own clues for two or three jobs. Read the clues to your class. See if your classmates can guess the jobs.

3 Grammar



The Subjunctive

We use the subjunctive to stress the importance or urgency of an action. The subjunctive uses the base form of a verb.

The manager insisted that he **work** late.

It is important that you **be** at the meeting.

The subjunctive is used with certain verbs and expressions, like the following:

ask	request	it is essential
demand	require	it is imperative
insist	suggest	it is important
recommend	urge	it is necessary

The subjunctive follows the sentence pattern:

verb or expression + *that* + subject + (*not*) base verb

It is essential that you **dress** appropriately.

She **asked** that we **not be** late.

I'd Like You + Infinitive / I Want You + Infinitive

Two common phrases used to express a desire that someone do something are *I'd like you + infinitive* and *I want you + infinitive*.

I'd like you to help with this project.

I want you to finish the report this afternoon.

A. Rearrange the words and phrases to form sentences.

💡 asks / I work on the weekend / my manager often / that
My manager often asks that I work on the weekend.

1. he / that / bring his résumé to the interview / he recommended
2. I / to tell me / want / you / about any problems you have
3. that / it is imperative / wash his hands before entering the operating room / the doctor
4. not / demanded / the boss / he / be late again / that
5. that / you go home early / I / if you're not feeling well / insist
6. you / applying for the job / like / to consider / I'd
7. I look for a job in sales / suggested / that / my job counselor
8. not / that you / quit your job before you find a new one / it is essential
9. the waiting room / the nurse / that / be kept quiet / requests
10. that / race car drivers / it is important / the necessary safety precautions / take

3 Grammar

Language Builder

Explain that some languages, such as Spanish, have a fully developed subjunctive mood that is used frequently. English does not. The use presented here is one of the few uses of the subjunctive in English.

Another one is the use of *were* with all persons in past unreal conditions. For example: *If I were you, I wouldn't do that.* *If he were here, I'd say hello.* These forms are not used frequently and sound quite formal.

Language Builder

Emphasize that in English it is incorrect to say *I want that you (do something)* or *I'd like that you (do something)*. Write the following sentences on the board and compare them.

He asked that we arrive early tomorrow.

He wants us to arrive early tomorrow.

The sentence with *ask* uses a *that*-clause. The sentence with *want* does not. Note also that the sentence with *ask* sounds more formal.

The Subjunctive

- Read the explanation of the subjunctive with the class. Emphasize that it is used to stress the urgency or importance of an action. Point out that the subjunctive uses the base form of the verb, often in cases where you would expect another form.
- Write these sentences on the board and highlight the use of *he finish* in the second sentence instead of the expected *he finishes*.

He usually finishes his work on time.

It is imperative that he finish this job on time.

- Write these sentences on the board:

Ahmed isn't usually late for work.

It's important that Ahmed not be late tomorrow.

You don't drive your father's car.

It is imperative that you not drive his car without permission.

Point out that the subjunctive forms the negative by putting *not* in front of the verb. It doesn't use auxiliary verbs or contracted forms.

I'd Like You + Infinitive / I Want You + Infinitive

- Tell students a few things that you'd like them to do and a few things that you want them to do. Speak more gently and politely when saying *I'd like* and more firmly when saying *I want*.
- Explain that *I'd like you to (do something)* and *I want you to (do something)* mean almost the same thing. However, saying *I'd like you to (do something)* is a little more polite and less like an order. *I want you to (do something)* can sound like an order.

A

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Then write the parts of the first sentence on the board. Elicit the correct sentence from the class and write it on the board.
- Have students work individually or with a partner to rearrange the other sentences.
- Check answers by having students read the sentences aloud.

Answers

1. He recommended that he bring his résumé to the interview.
2. I want you to tell me about any problems you have.
3. It is imperative that the doctor wash his hands before entering the operating room.
4. The boss demanded that he not be late again.
5. If you're not feeling well, I insist that you go home early. / I insist that you go home early if you're not feeling well.
6. I'd like you to consider applying for the job.
7. My job counselor suggested that I look for a job in sales.
8. It is essential that you not quit your job before you find a new one.
9. The nurse requests that the waiting room be kept quiet.
10. It is important that race car drivers take the necessary safety precautions.

5 Working 9 to 5

B

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Then look at the first picture with the class. Elicit several ideas for what either woman could be saying. For example, the stylist might be saying, *I suggest that we cut it shorter this time.* The client might be saying, *I don't want you to cut it too short.* Emphasize that there is no one right or wrong answer.
- Have students work with a partner to write sentences for the other pictures. Tell them that they can write more than one sentence if they want to.
- As students are working, go around and check that students are using both forms, the subjunctive and *want/would like + infinitive*. Encourage students to be creative in their answers.
- Check answers by eliciting several sentences for each picture from different pairs.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- I recommend you cut your hair short.
- I suggest that you try this on.
- It's important that we catch this train.
- It's essential that you brush well twice a day.
- I want you to stop smoking.
- I want you to study the new proposals very carefully.
- I'd like you to take two pills every morning.

C

- Read the directions and the information about the two situations with the class.
- Assign each student in the class one of the two situations. Have students work individually to write four or five sentences about the situation. They should make sure that they use both the subjunctive and *want/would like + infinitive* in their sentences.
- Put students in pairs of one student who wrote about situation 1 and one student who wrote about situation 2. Students read their sentences to each other and comment on them. Then they work together to write at least one more sentence about each situation.
- Check answers by asking a few volunteers to read one or two of their sentences. Then ask if anyone has any sentences that are different.

Workbook

Assign pages 48-50 for practice with the grammar of the unit.

Teaching Tip

When doing exercises, try to balance time students spend working on their own with time spent working with a partner or in a group. Students need time on their own so that each one will think about the exercise independently. But if students spend too much time working on their own, it becomes boring and is not a good use of class time.

Additional Activity

Write some sentence starters like the following on the board and have students complete them with their own ideas.

It's imperative that we _____.

It's important that our class _____.

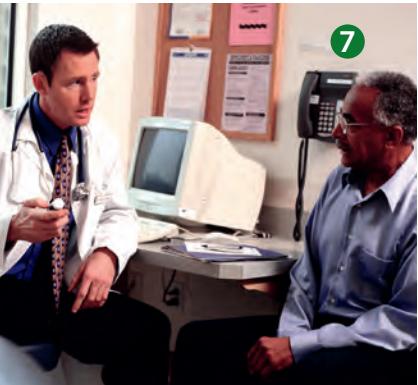
It is necessary that students _____.



According to a survey by Careerbuilder.com, twenty percent of workers in the U.S. say they are late for work at least once a week. Twelve percent say they are late twice a week. The two main excuses were traffic and lack of sleep.

B. Look at the pictures. What do you think is being said? Write a sentence for each using the subjunctive or *I'd like you / I want you + infinitive*.

 It is essential that we not be late for the meeting.



C. Write sentences for these situations. Use the subjunctive and *I'd like you / I want you + infinitive*.

1. Imagine you are a doctor speaking with a patient who has a very unhealthy lifestyle. The patient smokes, eats lots of fast food, doesn't get any exercise, and doesn't get enough sleep. What would you say to this patient?
2. Imagine you are a teacher speaking with a student who is doing badly in your class. The student is not studying for tests, is talking in class, is not doing homework, and does not take notes in class. What would you say to this student?

4 Conversation



Adnan: Hey, Rob. I'm **in a bind**. Can you **help me out**?

Rob: What's the problem?

Adnan: I'm supposed to work tomorrow, but there's something I've got to do. Could you **cover** for me?

Rob: You just asked me to cover for you on Monday. What's so important that I have to keep doing your job?

Adnan: OK, I'll tell you, but I'd appreciate it if you would **keep it to yourself**. I'm interviewing for another job, and I'm really close to getting it.

Rob: You were just hired here a few weeks ago. I can't believe you're thinking about leaving already.

Adnan: Yeah, I know. But the job I'm interviewing for is a dream job. I'd be a tester at a video game development company.

Rob: **No kidding?** Wow. Well, I still don't think it's right for you to **jump ship** like that, but all right. I'll cover for you.

Adnan: Thanks a lot. I'm going to **take off** now.

Rob: Hey, Adnan?

Adnan: Yeah?

Rob: If you get the job, do you think you could ask them if they need anyone else?

Adnan: **Will do.**

About the Conversation

1. Why does Adnan ask Rob to cover for him?
2. How does Rob initially react to the request?
3. What favor does Rob ask of Adnan?

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Ask your partner for a favor. Your partner is unwilling to grant the favor until understanding why it is necessary. Use the phrases for asking for favors.



Real Talk

in a bind = in a difficult situation

help me out = do me a favor

cover = take someone's place, often in a work situation

keep it to yourself = not tell anyone

No kidding? = Really?

jump ship = leave a job suddenly, usually to go to a new job

take off = leave

Will do. = short for "I will do it."

Asking for Favors

Do you think you could...?

Do me a favor and...

I'd really appreciate it if you would...

Would it be possible/too much trouble...?

What are the chances you could...?

I hate to ask, but...

4 Conversation

- Introduce the expression *cover for (someone)* by giving some examples. If a teacher has to leave the classroom, they may ask another teacher to *cover for them* until they get back. Someone who works as a receptionist and shouldn't leave their desk may ask another person to *cover for them* if they have to go out for a few minutes. Ask students if they are ever in a situation in which they have to ask someone to cover for them.
- Explain that they're going to listen to a conversation in which someone is asking another person to cover for them.
 - Play the audio. Have students listen with their books closed.
 - Ask several students to tell you just one thing that they understood from the conversation. Make a few notes on the board about their answers.
 - Play the audio again. Have students listen and read along in their books. Review the notes on the board. Were students' ideas after the first listening correct?

Real Talk

- Model the phrases for the students to repeat.
- Ask questions about their use in the conversation. For example, ask:

Why does Adnan say that he's in a bind? (He can't go to work the next day.)

How is Rob going to help Adnan out? (He's going to cover for him.)

Why does Adnan want Rob to keep this to himself? (He doesn't want anyone to know he's missing work to interview for another job.)

Why does Adnan say it isn't right for Rob to jump ship? (He thinks Mike shouldn't change jobs suddenly like that.)

What does Adnan mean when he says he's going to take off now? (He's going to leave the office.)

What does Adnan mean when he says Will do? (He means that if he gets the job, he'll ask if the other company needs anyone else.)

About the Conversation

- Work with the whole class to ask and answer the questions. Elicit answers from a few different students for each question. Don't confirm or deny answers yourself. Rather, ask other students: **Do you agree?**
- After each question, ask more questions to elicit students' opinions about the situation. For example:

Question 1

Adnan asks Rob to cover for him because he's going to interview for another job. Is this OK or is it wrong? What will their employer do if he finds out? Could Rob get in trouble?

Question 2

What would you do if you were Rob? Would you cover for a friend in this situation?

Question 3

What do you think about changing jobs in this way? Is it a good idea or not?

Answers

- Adnan asks Rob to cover for him while he has an interview for another job.
- At first, Rob doesn't want to cover for Adnan since he worked for him another time recently.
- Rob asks Adnan to find out if the video game development company might need someone else. He is interested in applying for the job.

Your Turn

- Call on a student to read the directions aloud.
- Focus students' attention on the phrases in the box. Explain that these are phrases that people often use when asking for favors. They make the request sound more polite. Ask: **Which phrase does Adnan use in the conversation?** (I'd appreciate it if you would...)
- Brainstorm briefly with the class a few situations in which they might ask someone else for a favor. Some possible ideas include: asking a teacher to postpone a test or for permission to hand in an assignment late; or asking parents for permission to do something unusual, like stay out late or take a trip with friends.
- Have students work in pairs to role-play their conversation. They should use phrases for asking for favors.
- Have one or two pairs act out their conversations for the class.

5 Listening

- Tell students they will listen to people talking about how satisfied they are with their jobs.
- ▶ Play the audio. Have students listen and circle yes or no for each job.
- ▶ Play the audio again. Have students write the reasons.
- ▶ Play the audio again for students to check their answers.

Answers

1. yes—satisfaction from helping others
2. yes—exciting, and protecting others is satisfying
3. yes—creativity and flexibility
4. no—high stress and great responsibility
5. yes—helping children and watching them grow up
6. no—repetitive and efforts aren't appreciated
7. no—repetitive and efforts aren't appreciated

▶ Audioscript

The results of a recent survey reveal some interesting information about the jobs people feel provide the most—and the least—job satisfaction. According to the survey, the workers who enjoy the greatest job satisfaction include social workers, firefighters, and authors.

Social workers top the list with a striking 87 percent job satisfaction rating. When questioned about the cause of their job satisfaction, social workers often cited the immense satisfaction gained from helping others. Firefighters are in the second position with an impressive 80 percent satisfaction rating. Many of the firefighters interviewed indicated the satisfaction they get from protecting people as well as the excitement of their job as reasons for their job satisfaction. The third most satisfying job, according to the survey, belongs to authors, with a 77 percent satisfaction rating. Many authors cited both the creativity and flexibility of their job as reasons for their satisfaction.

Interestingly, not all prestigious professions did as well as expected in the survey. Both physicians and lawyers scored only 48 percent each. The report suggests that these lower than average scores may be explained by the high stress and great responsibility involved in these jobs. However, pediatricians, that is children's doctors, proved to be an interesting exception. With a 75 percent satisfaction rating, pediatricians have a 27 percent higher satisfaction rate than general practice physicians. Helping children and being able to watch them grow up contributes to this general satisfaction.

Among the least satisfying jobs were cashiers at 25 percent, telemarketers at 32 percent, and fast food preparation workers at 34 percent. People with these jobs cited the repetitive nature of

their job and the fact that they don't feel others appreciate their efforts as reasons for their job dissatisfaction.

This job survey is of particular interest to young people who are just now considering their possible future career paths. It is a reminder that, because job satisfaction affects both our physical and mental well-being, job selection is one of the most important decisions we make in our lives.

6 Pronunciation

- ▶ Play the audio for students to listen and repeat, or speak along with the recording.

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Have students work individually to match the words with the definitions.

B

- Have students compare answers with a partner.

Answers

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. g | 3. f | 5. b | 7. d |
| 2. c | 4. h | 6. e | 8. a |

Workbook

Assign page 51 for additional reading practice.

Teaching Tip

Asking students to mention just one thing they understood after listening to something once is a non-threatening way to approach a listening task. It builds confidence and increases everyone's ability to understand more the next time they listen.

Additional Activity

Have students do a job survey among friends and family about job satisfaction. They should write each job and have the person rate the job from 1 (not satisfying) to 5 (very satisfying). Have students report their findings to the class.



In a recent study, two jobs rated worst for job satisfaction were lumberjack and taxi driver. The reasons were the dangerous working conditions and poor pay.

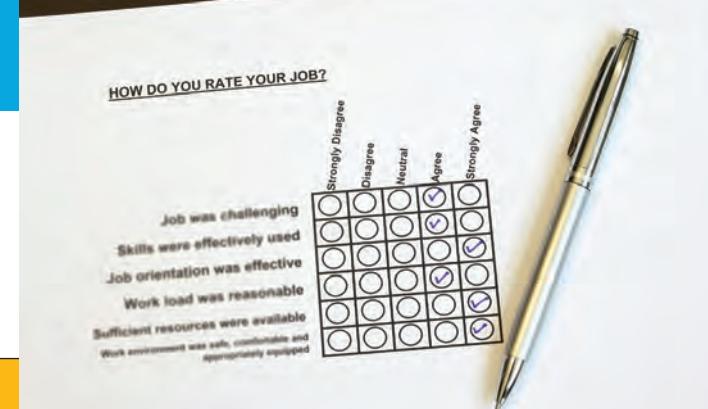
5 Listening



Listen to the results of a survey on job satisfaction.

Complete the chart.

Job	Majority Satisfied?	Reason?
1. social workers	Yes / No	
2. firefighters	Yes / No	
3. authors	Yes / No	
4. lawyers	Yes / No	
5. pediatricians	Yes / No	
6. cashiers	Yes / No	
7. telemarketers	Yes / No	



6 Pronunciation



In words ending with *-tion*, *-cian*, and *-sion*, the next-to-last syllable is stressed.

Listen and practice.

1. Firefighters are in second **position** with an impressive 80 percent **satisfaction** rating.
2. Not all prestigious **professions** did as well as expected.
3. Both **physicians** and lawyers scored only 48 percent each.
4. **Pediatricians** proved to be an interesting **exception**.
5. Fast food **preparation** workers have a 34 percent **satisfaction** rating.
6. Job **selection** is one of the most important **decisions** we make.

7 Vocabulary Building



A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 74 and 75. Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. _____ analyze | a. disease or sickness received from someone or something |
| 2. _____ determine | b. exactly the same |
| 3. _____ identifying | c. to decide or discover |
| 4. _____ allergens | d. confined, kept under restraint or control |
| 5. _____ identical | e. a natural talent or ability |
| 6. _____ flair | f. determining what something is |
| 7. _____ captive | g. to study closely |
| 8. _____ infection | h. substances that cause sensitivity or reactions in some people |

B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

8 Reading



Before Reading

Read the passages and make a list of the unusual jobs.

You Do *What* for a Living?

When you were a kid, what did you want to be when you grew up? Perhaps a doctor, a teacher, or a firefighter? You probably didn't consider becoming a greeting card writer or a snow researcher (a person who collects ice crystals in snow to analyze the effect of pollution on an area of snowfall). Yet thousands of people around the world earn a living performing unusual jobs that most people have never even heard of.



Take Lily Martinez, for example. She has a job that girls around the world would dream about doing—if they only knew about it! Martinez is a doll fashion designer. She remembers, “As a girl, I would design one-of-a-kind outfits for my dolls.” Her work is very similar to the work of regular fashion designers. She analyzes fashion trends, chooses fabrics, draws design sketches, and keeps a close eye on the styles of Paris and New York. Only she does all this to create clothing for 11 ½-inch (29-centimeter) dolls!

Do you have an artistic flair and an interest in science? Do you have a strong sense of taste, smell, and imagination? Then you might make an ideal flavorist. A flavorist is a person who creates natural and artificial flavorings that go into foods. Their work entails first identifying the individual chemicals found in nature. Then they recreate the flavors using different chemical combinations. Such manufactured flavors often last longer, have a stronger flavor, and smell better than flavors found in nature. These flavors can also avoid the allergens sometimes contained in natural flavors.

According to Carol Militescu, a senior flavorist, there is not one single way to create a flavor. “Different chemical combinations can make the same flavor. You might think the flavors are identical, but how you put the chemicals together makes them very different.” Militescu says that to be a successful flavorist, it is essential that you “think outside the box.”



8 Reading

- With books closed, discuss the **Before Reading** question as a class: ***What are the most unusual jobs you've ever heard of?***

READING STRATEGY Jigsaw reading

- Read the title of the article with stress on the word *what* and question intonation. Explain that people sometimes ask a question in this way when they are surprised by something they've heard. For example, a person may say things like *You did what? They went where?*
- Give students a minute to read the introductory paragraph. Point out that *What are you going to be when you grow up?* is a question adults commonly ask children in English. Ask: ***What jobs does the paragraph mention? What do people with each of these jobs do?*** (A doll fashion designer designs clothes for dolls. A flavorist creates natural and artificial flavorings that go into foods. Elephant pedicurists scrapes the bottom of the elephants' feet to get rid of dirt that can cause infection.)
- Tell students that they are each going to read about only one of the people in the article. Ask them *not* to read about the other people. (You could, if possible, make copies of the article, cut it up, and give each student only the first paragraph and the section about the person they have been assigned.)
- Have students count off around the classroom with the numbers 1, 2, and 3. Number 1s read about the first person, Lily Martinez. Number 2s read about Carol Militescu, and Number 3s read about Mike Hayward. Give them four or five minutes to read the paragraph.
- Write the following questions on the board. As they read, students should prepare to answer these questions:
 - What does the person do?***
 - What does their job entail?***
 - What does the person say about their job?***
- Then put students in groups of three, so that each group is made up of students with the numbers 1, 2, and 3. Have each student tell the others in the group about the paragraph he or she read.
-  Play the audio for the whole article. Have students listen and read along in their books.

- For additional vocabulary practice, have students work with a partner to complete the following tasks, using the article *You Do What for a Living?* Either write the following on the board, or make a copy for each pair.

Lily Martinez

- Find at least four different nouns that relate to the work a fashion designer does.

- Find a four-word expression that means *unique*.

Carol Militescu

- Find three adjectives that you can use to describe flavors.

- Find an expression that means *to come up with unusual ideas*.

Mike Hayward

- Find a two-word verb that means *to become less or smaller because of constant use*.

- Find four verbs that are used to describe what a pedicurist does to an elephant's feet and nails.

Conclusion

- Find an expression that means *to think about something carefully and for a long time*.

- Possible answers include:

- outfits, (fashion) trends, fabrics, (design) sketches, runways

- one-of-a-kind

- natural, artificial, manufactured, strong(er)

- think outside the box

- wear down

- scrape, get rid of (calluses), trim, file, shape

- mull over

5 Working 9 to 5

After Reading

- Have students work individually to write answers to these questions. Encourage them to use their own words as much as possible. One way to do this is for students to read the sentences that answer the question and then close the book to write the answer. Then they check back in the book to see if their answer captures the main ideas.
- Check answers by calling on students to read their answers aloud.

Answers

- She is a fashion designer for doll clothing.
- She studies fashion trends, chooses fabrics, draws pictures of her designs, and watches fashion shows.
- A flavorist makes natural and artificial flavorings to put into food.
- Manufactured flavors last longer, have stronger flavor, smell better, and have fewer allergens.
- An elephant pedicure entails scraping the bottom of the elephant's feet to get rid of calluses, dirt, and rocks, and trimming, filing, and shaping the nails.
- Captive elephants cannot wear down their nails naturally, and rocks and dirt in their feet can cause infections.

9 Speaking

- Put students in small groups to discuss the questions. For question 1, each student should say which job he or she might like and why. If a student doesn't like any of the jobs, he or she should also explain why not.
- For question 2, have students copy the chart to their notebook and have one person in each group make notes of their classmates'.
- Discuss the questions briefly with the class. After students have given their guesses for the unusual jobs, tell them the correct information for any they didn't guess.

odor judge = someone who tests odors coming from people's armpits, mouths, or feet and things like cat litter or baby diapers (The purpose is to test the effectiveness of products designed to get rid of bad odors.)

golf ball diver = someone who dives into ponds and lakes on golf courses looking for golf balls

cheese sprayer = someone who sprays popcorn or similar foods with melted cheese

gum buster = someone who removes chewing gum from sidewalks, streets, and other areas

Workbook

Assign pages 52-53 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Teaching Tip

It's very challenging for students to answer questions about a reading text in their own words. Use every opportunity to practice this skill.

Additional Activity

If possible, invite an English speaker from the community to the class to talk about their job. Students should prepare questions in advance.

Project: Job Ads

Have students write a Help Wanted ad for an unusual job. They can check the Internet for language for job advertisements. Then have students work in groups to make a poster using all of their ads.

fun facts

- An odor judge has to train for a year for the job and then be retested every year to make sure their sense of smell is still good enough.
- A golf ball diver can find between 2,500 and 5,000 golf balls a day. They are paid 8 or 9 cents per ball.

But perhaps you would prefer a job working with animals? If so, you might consider a career as an elephant pedicurist. It may sound silly, but keeping elephants' nails clean and trim is critical to their health. Like human nails, elephant nails grow continuously. Elephants in the wild wear down their nails naturally, but captive elephants have fewer opportunities to roam. Elephant pedicurists scrape the bottom of the elephants' feet to get rid of calluses, dirt, and embedded rocks that can cause infection. They also trim, file, and shape the elephants' nails.



Mike Hayward, the elephant pedicurist for the Ringling Bros. and Barnum & Bailey Circus®, loves his job. He gives pedicures to his twelve elephants every five weeks. The elephants generally cooperate with Hayward, waiting patiently through the two-hour process. Says Hayward, "It's almost like not going to work because the elephants are like my family."

So the next time you mull over your future career path, you might want to consider some non-traditional career options. After all, there just may be a new flavor waiting to be discovered, or an elephant whose feet will benefit from your expert care.

After Reading

Answer the questions.

1. What is Lily Martinez's job?
2. What are some of her responsibilities?
3. Describe what a flavorist does.
4. What are some of the benefits of manufactured flavors?
5. What does giving an elephant a pedicure entail?
6. Why is it important to give pedicures to captive elephants?

9 Speaking



1. What do you think of the jobs described in the reading? Do you find any of them interesting? Why? Why not?
2. Think about the list of unusual jobs in the chart. Have you ever heard of them? Find out what they are and complete the chart with the information.

The unusual job		What is it?	What does it entail?	Do I like it or not?
1	odor judger			
2	golf ball diver			
3	cheese sprayer			
4	gum buster			

10 Writing



A. Read about some more unusual jobs and complete the job title. Work in pairs. Compare your ideas in class.

_____ consultants: The people who advise construction companies and manufacturers on vibration and noise problems and suggest solutions.

_____ authenticators: The people who differentiate between true/authentic and fake paintings.

_____ consultants: The people who advise riders on how they can have the most comfortable horse back ride with the most suitable riding accessory.

1. Read the essay and find out the following:

- What does an arborist do?
- What kind of qualifications does he need to have?
- Which personal characteristics should he have?
- What are his employment prospects?

2. What is your view as a reader?

- Are ideas and information presented clearly?
- Does the writer provide explanations, examples, or reasons when necessary?
- Does the essay answer your questions about what an arborist is/does?

3. Look at the essay again and write which person is used in each paragraph:

I, you, he or she and so on.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| • Paragraph 1: _____ | • Paragraph 3: _____ |
| • Paragraph 2: _____ | • Paragraph 4: _____ |

4. Notice which paragraphs provide:

- the writer's view and/or opinion
- objective information and/or view

5. Are there any passive forms? What are they used for?

6. How are ideas and facts connected? Provide examples from the text.

- conjunctions/linking words
- combined clauses/sentences
- use of pronouns



The Job of an Arborist

Although my parents would like me to become a doctor or a lawyer, I am interested in a very different kind of job. I would like to be an arborist, a sort of doctor for trees.

To become an arborist, it is essential that you have a related bachelor's degree, for example in forestry, as the more you know about trees the better you will be able to do what is expected of you.

Arborists are hired by individuals or organizations to keep trees healthy and attractive. They fertilize, prune, plant, and cure trees. In other words, they are a kind of official "tree carer." They are considered experts in their field. For this reason, they need to attend workshops and seminars throughout their career in order to keep up with developments.

I think it's perfect for me. I am interested in working in nature and taking care of things. I like trees. I am patient, methodical, and hard working. Finally, given current trends towards greener alternatives, I think there will be plenty of work for arborists in the future, so unemployment will not be a problem.

10 Writing

A

- Brainstorm on more unusual jobs. Elicit ideas from the class. Ask students if they know about any traditional jobs in their country that are beginning to become very rare. Hold a brief discussion in class.
- Direct students to A. Read directions with the class. Explain that new words are often made up to label unusual jobs by combining existing words.
- Organize students into pairs. Have them read the descriptions/definitions of the jobs and complete the job title.
- Call on pairs to suggest titles.

Answers

- noise consultants
- art/ painting authenticators
- riding consultants
- Direct students to the picture and the title of the text. Ask them to try and work out what an arborist does. Call on volunteers to answer for the class.
- Read directions for 1. Elicit possible answers from students. Remind them that predicting will help them read more efficiently and understand the text.
- Play the audio and have students listen and follow. Give them a few minutes to compare answers with a partner and check the answers in class.

Answers

- An arborist is a kind of official “tree carer” or tree doctor. He fertilizes, prunes, plants , and cures trees.
- An arborist needs to have a related bachelor’s degree, for example in forestry and attend seminars and workshops throughout his career.
- He should be patient, methodical, and hard working. He should also be interested in working in nature and taking care of things.
- His employment prospects are quite promising due to current trends and greener alternatives.
- Have students read directions for 2 and answer the questions individually. Call on volunteers to report their answers for the class.

Answers

- Yes, ideas and information are presented clearly.
- Yes, he does. For example, ... a related bachelor’s degree, for example in forestry , as the more you know about trees the better you will be able to do what is expected of you.
- Yes. (answers might vary)

- Ask students to justify their answers by providing reasons or clues from the text.
- Explain to students that choice of person in writing affects the style and creates or minimizes proximity between reader and writer. Have them read the directions for 3 and 4.
- Organize students in groups and have them read the text and answer the questions.
- Call on a student from each group to report the group’s answers for the class.

Answers

- **Paragraph 2:** you (to mean one, someone)
- **Paragraph 3:** Arborists/ they
- **Paragraph 4:** I

- Discuss the effect that change of person creates. Ask students when they think the writer would use third person and not first.
- Have a volunteer answer 4.

Answers

- The writer’s view and opinion are presented in paragraphs 1 and 4.
- Objective information is presented in paragraphs 2 and 3.
- Passive forms are used to present objective/ impersonal information.
- Ideas are connected with:
Conjunctions: for example although, and, in other words
Combined clauses/sentences: to become an arborist, it is essential thatgiven current trends towards greener alternatives, I think ...

Additional Activity

Have students research more unusual jobs on the internet or in older books and encyclopedias, make notes and collect photos. Call on students to present what they found for the class.

5 Working 9 to 5

B

- Tell students that they will write an essay about an unusual job that they would like to have.
- Read directions for tasks 1 and 2 and have students decide on an unusual job individually. Ask questions like these to help them decide:

What do you like doing? What kind of places do you like?

**Do you like spending more time inside or outside?
Which room/place do you spend more time in at home?**

What are you good at? What would you like to develop/learn?

- Suggest to students that they create an unusual job for themselves taking into consideration their answers to the questions or search for more unusual jobs on the Internet.
- Read the directions for task 3 with the class and have students brainstorm and make notes.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Explain that they are going to write an opinion essay defending their decision. Tell students that the best way to defend an opinion is to have adequate information.
- Read through all the points in the Writing Corner and discuss them in class. Point out that the main thing is for their opinion to be heard.
- Have students make notes under these headings as well.

Personal views:

Feelings:

Opinions:

Information:

- Have students write a job description.
- Tell them to list job responsibilities as they see them in combination with information they found in other sources. Ask them to include qualifications and experience under Important background and personal qualities under Helpful characteristics
- Direct them to the model text but allow them to use a different opening statement if they wish.
- Have them write their first draft.
- Exchange drafts and comment, suggest corrections on each other's texts. Have them edit and rewrite.
- Call on students to read their descriptions for the class.
- Create a gallery of job descriptions on the board. Have students draw or bring photos to add.

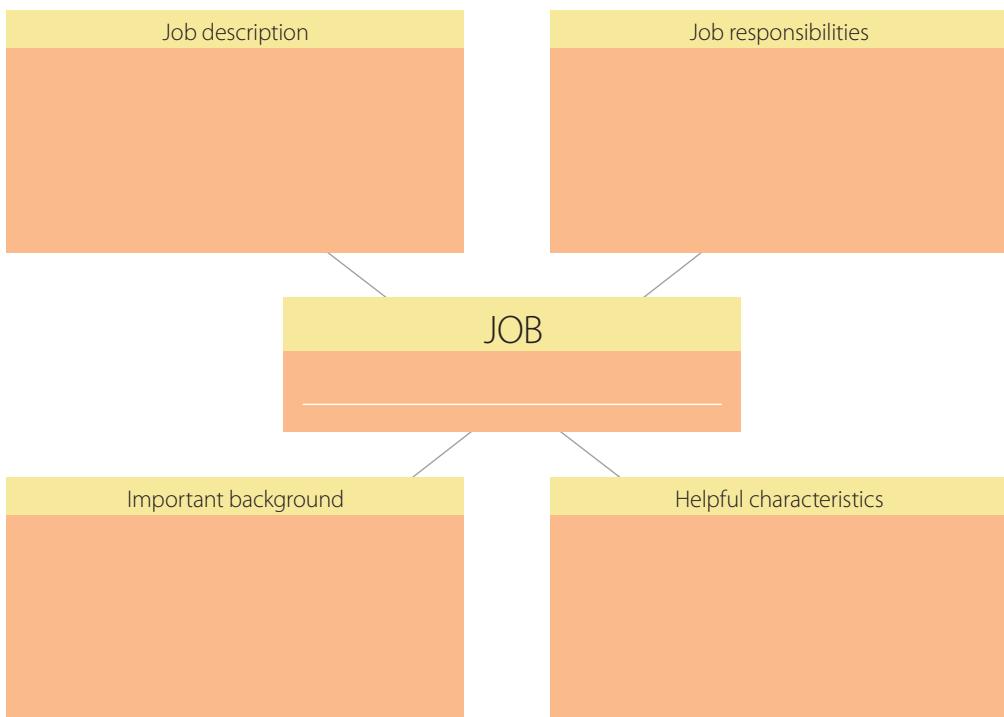
Additional Activity

Write job announcements and organize interviews for some of the unusual jobs. Assign roles of interviewers and applicants to different groups and act out.

Workbook

Assign page 54 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

- B.** 1. Write an essay about an unusual job you might like to have.
 2. Before you write, think about and/or find on the Internet:
 • a description of the job
 • the background you should have for this job
 • personal characteristics that would help you perform the job effectively
 3. Use the chart to help you brainstorm and organize your information.



The Job of a/an _____

Although I am good at _____,
 everybody expects me to become a _____,
 I would like to be a/an _____

Writing Corner

When you write an opinion essay:

- note down what you know about the topic and collect new information.
- note down your personal views on the topic and express your feelings and opinions.
- combine your views and feelings with the relevant information and organize each paragraph.
- remember that it is your essay and your voice needs to come through.

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Tag Questions

We use tag questions to check information. We use an auxiliary verb and a subject personal pronoun. With an affirmative sentence, use a negative tag. With a negative sentence, use an affirmative tag.

You will go to the bank, **won't you?**

They invested in the property market, **didn't they?**

You won't work this Saturday, **will you?**

He didn't get the job, **did he?**

There's a cash machine on Main Street, **isn't there?**

It was the night shift you wanted, **wasn't it?**

They are not going to go look for another job, **are they?**

You are working today, **aren't you?**

Polite Ways to Ask for Information with *Can*, *Could* and *Would*

Excuse me, can (could) you tell me where the bank is? Would you be able to tell me where the bank is?
Can (Could) you tell me where the bank is? Would you mind telling me where the bank is?

Polite Ways to Make Requests with *Can*, *Could* and *Would*

Q: Can you give me your credit card details, please?

A: Certainly.

Q: Could you help me?

A: Of course.

Q: Would you open the window, please?

A: Sure.

- A.** Read the conversation between the bank teller and a customer. Use *could*, *would* and question tags to complete the conversation.

A: Excuse me, I'd like to withdraw 500 euro from my account in 50 euro notes.

B: Of course, Madam. (1) _____ I have a form of identity, please?

A: Sure. Here you are.

B: Thank you. So you want the total amount in 50 euro notes, (2) _____ you?

A: Yes, that's right.

B: Is there anything else I can do for you today, Madam?

A: Yes, please. I'd also like to change some American dollars into Saudi riyals? You charge commission, (3) _____ you?

B: Yes, Madam, we do. Our rates are displayed on the board.

A: I see, thanks. (4) _____ you mind telling me how many riyals I will get for 1000 dollars?

B: Of course. At today's exchange rate you will get ...

- B.** Work with a partner. Imagine you work as a bank teller. Continue the conversation in exercise **A** using some of the words and ideas in the box. Include some responses from the customer. Role-play the conversation and take it in turns to be the bank teller and the customer.

pay a utility bill • make a deposit • make an international payment
 order a new debit card • open a savings account • transfer some money
 apply for a credit card • buy health insurance • apply for a mortgage



Language Builder

Aside from using tag questions to check information, we also use tag questions to ask for agreement. We use rising intonation—the voice goes up—when we check information (*You're going to come to the museum, aren't you?*), but falling intonation—the voice goes down—when we know the answer and are just asking for agreement (*It's really hot, isn't it?*).

Tag Questions

- Have volunteers read aloud the questions in the presentation. Point out the rules about forming tag questions: If the first part of the sentence is affirmative, the tag is negative. We make the first part affirmative if we think the answer is yes. If the first part is negative, the tag is affirmative. We make the first part negative if we think the answer is no.

Polite Ways to Ask for Information with *Can, Could and Would*

Language Builder

Explain to students that each modal verb (*can, could, will, would*, etc.) can have several different meanings. For example, the meaning of *will* in *Will you do well on the test next week?* is a question about the future. The meaning of *will* in *Will you open that door for me?* is a request for someone to do something. In the latter case, we can substitute *will* for *can, could and would* with no change in actual meaning.

- Read through the example sentences and elicit the function of using modals *can, could* and *would* for requests. (To ask politely) Point out that *could* and *would* are a little more polite than *can* and *will*.
- Elicit some examples of situations in which it would be appropriate to use this kind of language: For example, in a working environment, when requesting something from a person in a more senior position or older in age and so on.
- Ask students to compare the function of making a request with *can, could* and *would* with their own language and culture. Is there something similar?

Polite Ways to Make Requests with *Can, Could and Would*

- Read the requests and have individual students read the agreements and the refusals.

A

- Have students look at the picture and describe the situation (A bank teller and customer.)
- Ask students to imagine what requests are being made and write any ideas on the board.
- Tell students to read the conversation in exercise A and see if any of their ideas appear.
- Students should work alone to complete the conversation and then compare their answer with a partner.

Answers

1. Can/Could 2. don't 3. don't 4. Would

B

- Go over the words and phrases in the box. Elicit or give the meaning of any unknown or unfamiliar language.
- Put students into pairs and tell them to take it in turns to role-play a conversation similar to the one in exercise A. Encourage students to use as much of the vocabulary as possible which appears in the language box.
- Call on volunteers to role-play their conversations in front of the class.

Answers

Students' own answers.

Teaching Tip

It's a good idea to let students check their answers together before eliciting them in front of the class. (1) It gives them the chance to correct errors on their own. (2) It builds confidence to find out that questions they had trouble with also gave their classmates trouble. (3) It allows students the opportunity to teach and learn from each other.

5 Working 9 to 5

Language Builder

Must expresses obligation, or something that is necessary and very important to do. There is no choice. For example: *I must study very hard. It is the only way I will get into medical school.*

In American English, *have to* is used more often than *must* to express obligation or necessity. *Must not* (or *mustn't*) means that something is prohibited. There is no choice. For example: *You must not speak in an exam. You'll be disqualified.*

Doesn't/Don't have to means that something is not necessary. For example: *I don't have to drive to work. I can take a bus.*

Should is used to give advice or make a suggestion that might be important, but it gives the listener the choice to take the advice or not. For example: *You shouldn't cheat in exams. It's not fair and you will get caught.*

Express Obligation: *Must, Mustn't, Have to*

- Explain that the form of the modal verb *must* is the same for all subjects. It is followed by the base form of the main verb without *to*.
- Tell students we use *mustn't* to express that something is forbidden or not allowed. For example, *You mustn't jump red lights. You mustn't speed. It's illegal and you will get fined heavily.*
- The form of *have to* changes to agree with the subject. We also use *have to* to express obligation and necessity. *You have to slow down. You are driving too fast and you will cause an accident and hurt someone.*
- Read through the example sentences in the presentation and point out that the past of *have to* is *had to* to express past obligation and necessity. There is no past tense of *must* or *mustn't* to express past obligation or necessity.

Express Necessity and Lack of Necessity: *Have to, Need to, Needn't, Don't have to, Don't Need to*

- Explain that we use *don't have to* to say there is NO obligation; it isn't necessary. The past form is *didn't have to*.
- Explain that we can substitute (*don't*) *have to* with (*don't*) *need to* with no change in meaning.
You don't have to get there before 9.
You need to go to reception when you arrive.

- Call on volunteers to read aloud the example sentences in the chart.

C

- Put students into pairs to complete the exercise.
- Call on volunteers to share their ideas with the class.
- Correct any errors with modality on the board as a class.

Answers

1. You mustn't/ must not park here.
2. You mustn't/ must not overtake on this road.
3. You must not drive faster than 70./ You have to adhere to the speed limit of 70.
4. You must not drive down this road.

D

- Ask students to turn back to page 68 and to choose only one of the professions described.
- They should imagine themselves in that job and write down a list of duties, obligations or responsibilities they think are involved.
- Students should then use their ideas to make a note of things they had to or didn't have to do last week.
- Students share their ideas with a partner.
- Call on volunteers to read out their sentences to the class. The class should listen and try to guess which job that person chose.
- Encourage students to ask each other questions about other things they had to or didn't have to do.

Answers

Students' own answers.

Workbook

Assign pages 55-56 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.

Express Obligation: Must, Mustn't, Have to

We use *must*, *mustn't* and *have to* to express obligation in the present and the future.

You **must** stop at the 'STOP' sign.

You **have to** slow down at this junction.

You **mustn't (must not)** arrive late to work.

You **have to** be at the office at 9 a.m.

Note: *Mustn't* means you are not allowed to do something. There is no past tense of *mustn't*. The past tense of *must* and *have to* is **had to**.

Express Necessity and Lack of Necessity: Have to, Need to, Needn't, Don't have to, Don't Need to

We use *have to* and *need to* to express necessity in the present, past and future. Use the negative form to express lack of necessity.

Q: What do you **have (need) to** do today?

A: I **have (need) to** finish a report for work but I **don't need to (needn't)** hand it in until tomorrow morning.

Q: What duties **did you have (need) to** perform in your last job?

A: I **needed (had) to** answer the phone and deal with customer complaints.

Q: What **will we need to** do before we leave for the conference in Abu Dhabi?

A: We **will have (need) to** book an airport taxi. We **won't have (need) to** find a hotel. I've done that already.

C. With a partner, discuss what you have to and must do in the situations shown on the international traffic signs.



1. No Parking



2. No Passing



3. Speed Limit



4. No Entry

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

D. Read page 68 again. Choose one of the professions and imagine you are working in that job. What duties and responsibilities did you perform as part of your job last week? Write them next to each day. Tell your partner what you had to do. Use *had to*, *didn't have to*, *needed to*, and *didn't need to*.

Sunday	_____
Monday	_____
Tuesday	_____
Wednesday	_____
Thursday	_____
Friday	_____
Saturday	_____

5 Working 9 to 5

12 Project

1. Research and prepare a presentation for your class on **Great Jobs and Careers**.
2. Work in pairs or groups. Decide on three great jobs, then search and collect information about each.
3. Use the organizer to make notes. Then use your notes to prepare a PowerPoint presentation or a poster.
4. Present in class.



Job title	1 _____	2 _____	3 _____
Duties and activities			
Requirements			
Personal characteristics			
Employment prospects			
Career prospects			

When you prepare a PowerPoint presentation, remember to:

- think of your audience and what they might want to know
- select key points and words
- use appealing visuals and a few points on each slide
- rehearse in your group and make changes

12 Project



- Organize students in groups and have them brainstorm on Great Jobs and Careers.
- Call on a student from each group to present the group's ideas and discuss in class.
- Read directions for tasks 1 and 2. Discuss where students can find information.
- Remind them to use the Internet, look up business magazines and talk to adults that can give them information. Have them make notes and if possible record interviews.
- Have a class discussion about which jobs are considered prestigious and successful. Use questions like these to help students and have them answer them in their groups.

Which jobs are considered prestigious in your country?

Is success always associated with money?

What does a Great Career entail? Which are some of the conditions that are required for it to be considered great?

- Give groups some time (about 10 minutes) to discuss. Remind them to assign tasks to different group members and to make sure there is at least one person making notes.
- Call on a student from each group to report the group's ideas for the class. Encourage the class to comment, respond or challenge what is said. Remind them to give reasons that support their ideas.
- Direct students to the pictures at the top of the Project page. Elicit ideas about who the people are and what they are doing in the photos. Ask them if they would choose any of the jobs that are illustrated.
- Have them read the headings in the chart and choose three jobs to research and collect information about.
- Read the directions for 3 with the class. Have them study the chart and identify the areas indicated.
- Have students work in groups and discuss the information they have. Remind them to make notes in the organizer. Encourage them to be as creative as possible.
- Call on a student from each group to present some of their ideas for the class. Ask students to listen carefully and discuss or comment on the ideas that are presented.
- Have groups plan and prepare their presentation or poster. Encourage them to add their own ideas. Remind groups to assign tasks and responsibilities

to group members depending on their skills and abilities. Tell each group to appoint a chairperson that can control the discussion and make sure everyone has a chance to express their opinion and make suggestions. Circulate and monitor participation. Encourage quieter students to participate. Help when necessary.

- If there isn't internet access, tell students that they will have to do some of the work for the campaign in class and some after class.
In-class tasks: assign research and design tasks, assign responsibilities, share the work among members of the group.
Discuss and draft presentation, plan posters, collect and organize available information.
Out-of-class tasks: Research the Internet for information on Great Jobs and Careers.
- Explain to students that after they have collected all the information and designed their presentations and posters, they will spend some time in class coordinating before they present it in the next or the following lesson.

Additional Activity

Have students use a real event in the news or in history. Tell them that they are allowed to intersperse, delete or substitute words or information. They then read their modified text as naturally as possible for the rest of the students to spot the "defect" and stop them. If listeners spot 4 "defects" the presenters stop.

13 Self Reflection



- Write 'Working 9 to 5' on the board and elicit as many ideas and words as possible from the class. List the words on the board. Ask students to say what kind of jobs they associate the unit title with. Elicit answers from volunteers.
- Have students scan pages 68 and 69. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked about this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:
Which job or jobs require research of natural resources and materials?
Which job or jobs require observation and recording data?
Which job or jobs require long hours of work and handling pressure well?
- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 70, 71, ask them some questions. For example:
Complete these sentences:
At work it is essential that people ...
The manager demanded that all the employees ...
They asked her ...
...
Have volunteers answer the questions. Elicit more examples from pairs of students after you give them a couple of minutes to think.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.
- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 72, 73. Call on volunteers to say what the conversation is about and which are their favorite expressions.
- Have students say what they remember from this section and make notes in the chart.
- Write What Do You Do for a Living? on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember. Call on volunteers to list as many words as they can on the board. Encourage the rest of the class to make suggestions.
- Have a class discussion about unusual jobs.
- Have students complete their Self Reflection charts as before about likes, dislikes and things they found easy or difficult.

- Before directing students to 10 Writing ask them to say what they remember about unusual jobs that they read about on the Internet. Give them some time to work in pairs and then call on volunteers to answer.

- Have students scan pages 76 and 77 and make notes as before.
- Direct students to the 12 Project page and hold a discussion about what they found more or less useful and more or less interesting. Hold a class discussion about project work and research. Elicit ideas from the students and have them present their experiences for the class.

Did they have difficulty making decisions in their group? Why? Why not?

Did they feel that they had the chance to present their ideas?

Was it difficult or easy to access different sources and collect information? Why? Why not?

Where did they find information? Where did they find photos?

Did they enjoy preparing the campaign?

Would they change anything if they had the chance to do it again? What?

Was there room for originality and creativity?

Why? Why not?

- Allow time for students to make notes on the project section individually. Then have them check with a partner.

- Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.

- Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions. Check to make sure that they have chosen the appropriate suggestion from the last column in order to deal with difficulties.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 5:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 5:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 5:

Unit 5 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
talk about jobs			
discuss job requirements and responsibilities			
ask for favors			
use the subjunctive			
use the expressions <i>I'd like you</i> + infinitive and <i>I want you</i> + infinitive			
make requests and ask for information			
express obligation, necessity and lack of necessity			
use tag questions			

My five favorite new words from Unit 5:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 5:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

6 Going Green

1 Listen and Discuss



Read the questionnaire and then:

1. Write a definition for **Go Green**.
2. Write some ways a person can **Go Green**.



How Green Are You?

1. What do you do when you finish using your computer for the day?

- a. I leave the computer on so that I don't have to wait for it to boot up the next morning.
- b. I put the computer in "sleep" mode.
- c. I turn the computer off, so it doesn't waste any energy at all.

2. When you go shopping, what kind of bag do you use for your groceries?

- a. I put all my groceries into double plastic bags.
- b. I put them into brown paper bags.
- c. I wouldn't consider using anything but the reusable canvas bags that I bring with me.

3. What kind of fruits and vegetables do you prefer eating?

- a. I prefer eating fruits and vegetables that look perfect. I don't mind if pesticides were used to grow them.
- b. I prefer to eat organic fruits and vegetables when possible.
- c. I prefer to eat organic fruits and vegetables that I've grown myself.

4. What is the source of your drinking water throughout the day?

- a. I buy individual bottles of water and drink them throughout the day.
- b. I buy one bottle of water and refill the bottle throughout the day.
- c. I fill a glass with water from a large reusable bottle throughout the day.

5. Do you recycle your garbage?

- a. Recycling takes too much effort. I just throw all of my garbage in the trash can.
- b. Sometimes I forget to recycle items, but I intend to get better about it.
- c. I put all of my plastic, paper, glass, and metal garbage in recycling bins.

6. What would be your most important consideration when buying a car?

- a. I'd be most concerned with having a big, cool-looking car.
- b. I'd be most concerned with fuel efficiency.
- c. Cars are bad for the environment. I just use public transportation, or my feet!

7. How do you set your air conditioner on a hot day?

- a. I hate being hot! I turn the air conditioner up until the house almost feels cold.
- b. I set the air conditioner at a comfortable temperature during the day and turn it down at night.
- c. I set the air conditioner fairly low and dress in light clothing to keep cool.

8. Do you try to conserve water?

- a. I never think about water. I love taking long, hot showers.
- b. I try to be aware of my water consumption. I take quick showers and turn off the tap while I'm brushing my teeth.
- c. I try hard to conserve water. I collect rain water in a tank and use it for watering my garden.



Unit Goals

Vocabulary

Environment
Public utilities

Functions

Evaluate how "green"
you are
Make suggestions

Grammar

Gerunds After Verbs
Infinitives After Verbs

Listening

Listen for specific
information

Pronunciation

Thought groups

Reading

Living Off The Grid

Writing

Write a letter to a
newspaper

Form, Meaning and Function

Simple Present Versus
Present Progressive
Conditional Sentences for
Present and Future
I'd Rather

Warm Up

Briefly describe one change, real or imaginary, that you have made to live a "greener" lifestyle. For example, say:

I bring my own bag when I go to the supermarket.

Or, **I put glass bottles in the recycling bin.** Ask students to guess why you do these things. (to protect the environment) Then with books closed, ask students the introductory questions on page 82: **What does it mean to go green? What are some ways that people can go green?** Discuss possible answers as a class.

1 Listen and Discuss

- Focus students' attention on the picture at the top of the page. Ask: **What do you think this is?** (It's a wind farm, a non-polluting way of generating electricity.) Ask: **Are there any wind farms near where we live?**
- Have students look at the questionnaire, *How Green Are You?* Play the audio. Have students listen and read along in their books. Tell students not to mark their answers at this time.
- Have students read the questionnaire again and circle their answer to each question: *a*, *b*, or *c*. Then have them compare answers with a partner. When their answers are different, they explain to their partner why they chose their answer.

- Have students look at the scoring chart on page 83 and add up their points.

- With a show of hands, find out how many students scored in each category: 8 points, 9–16 points, or 17–24 points. Ask students if they agree with the scoring of the quiz. Are they as "green" as the quiz says?

- Have a class discussion. Ask students about their community and how "green" it is. For example, ask:

- 1. Are there any recycling laws in our community?**
- 2. Where does our electricity come from? How is it produced?**
- 3. What kind of bags do most people use in the grocery stores here?**
- 4. Can you buy organic fruits and vegetables around here?**
- 5. Do many people in the city have their own gardens?**
- 6. How do people heat and/or cool their homes?**
- 7. Is pollution from cars and other vehicles a problem?**
- 8. What does our school do to be "green"?**

- You may choose to do this activity for additional vocabulary practice: Write definitions on the board and have students find words or expressions in the questionnaire to match them. You could also do this activity orally. Read a definition, saying **Find a word that means...,** and have students raise their hands as soon as they think they have found the word. When a few students have their hands raised, call on one person for the answer. Possible definitions include:

start up a computer (boot up)

food you buy at a supermarket or similar store
(groceries)

you can use it again (reusable)

water that comes out of a pipe in the home
(tap water)

place for throwing away garbage (trash can)

to turn something up higher (crank up)

a place to store water (tank)

Quick Check

A

- Have students look at the words in the box and find them in the questionnaire.
- Have them work individually to complete the sentences. Then they compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers by calling on students to read the sentences. Have them try to explain the meaning of each word in their own words (in English). Possible answers include:

conserve = to save or use less of something

consumption = the act of using something

organic = referring to food produced naturally without chemicals or pesticides

pesticides = materials used to kill insects and other things that harm plants

source = the origin of something; where it comes from

air conditioner = something in a home or other building that is used to control the temperature

Answers

- air conditioner
- consumption
- pesticides
- Organic
- source
- conserve

B

- Have students work with a partner to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by calling on different pairs to report their answers. Ask the class if they agree with the answer or not.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- collect rain water for use; not leave the water running; take quick showers
- fuel efficiency
- plastic, paper, glass, and metal
- They can use pesticides.
- in plastic bags

2 Pair Work

- Have students work with a partner to create three more questions and answers to add to the quiz. They should include a, b, and c answer choices as in the questionnaire on page 82.
- As students are working, go around and help as needed with vocabulary or ideas.
- Have students pass their questions around the room and have several other pairs answer them.
- Discuss the responses to the questions with the class. How green are the students in the class?

Workbook

Assign page 57 for practice with the vocabulary of the unit.



Teaching Tip

Make sure to keep a record of new vocabulary (beyond what is in the book) that comes up as students discuss a new topic. Try to recycle these words as much as possible during the lessons.



Additional Activity

Have students each create their own *green dictionary*. This is an alphabetical list of words useful when discussing environmental issues.

fun facts

According to one source, these are five of the greenest cities in the world:

- Reykjavik, Iceland:** It uses hydrogen buses and gets all of its electricity from geothermal and hydropower.
- Portland, Oregon (U.S.):** It has a good system of public transportation and encourages the use of bicycles. It also has 92,000 acres of green space.
- Curitiba, Brazil:** This city is famous for its bus system, which is used by three-quarters of its people. It also has many city parks. They even use sheep to cut the grass!
- Malmo, Sweden:** Although this is Sweden's third-largest city, it is known for its many parks and lots of green space.
- Vancouver, Canada:** This large city draws 90 percent of its power from renewable energy sources. It is a leader in hydroelectric power and is developing systems to use wind, solar, wave, and tidal energy to reduce fossil-fuel use.



SCORING

Give yourself 1 point for each "a" answer.

Give yourself 2 points for each "b" answer.

Give yourself 3 points for each "c" answer.

8 points: You are a very light shade of green. Try to learn more ways of being environmentally responsible.

9–16 points: You are medium green. You make a real effort to care for the environment. Challenge yourself to become even greener!

17–24 points: You are the deepest green! Your actions make a big difference! Congratulations, and keep up the good work.

Quick Check ✓

A. Vocabulary. Complete the sentences with these words:

conserve
consumption

organic
pesticides

source
air conditioner

1. It's freezing in here. Why is the _____ set so high?
2. Half of the average family's energy _____ is used for heating and cooling their home.
3. Farmers use _____ to stop bugs and weeds from killing their crops.
4. _____ food is produced entirely without chemicals.
5. Pollution is the _____ of many environmental problems.
6. When the cost of electricity increases, people are more likely to _____ energy.

B. Comprehension. Answer the questions.

1. Name two ways you can conserve water.
2. What is something green to consider when buying a car?
3. What materials can be recycled?
4. How can farmers make fruits and vegetables that look perfect?
5. What's the worst way to bring home your groceries?

2 Pair Work



With a partner, create three more questions and answers to add to the quiz. Ask your classmates the questions and analyze their responses. How green is your class?

3 Grammar



Gerunds After Verbs

Gerunds are the *-ing* form of a verb. They act like nouns and answer the question *what*.

I recommend **turning off** the lights when you leave the room.

Our class enjoys **learning** about ways to help the environment.

We use gerunds after certain verbs, such as:

advise	enjoy	intend	quit
begin	finish	keep	recommend
can't stand	go	like	start
consider	hate	love	stop
continue	imagine	prefer	suggest

Infinitives After Verbs

An *infinitive* is *to* + the base form of a verb. Like gerunds, infinitives act like nouns and answer the question *what*.

Don't forget **to reuse** that plastic container.

Do they intend **to buy** a hybrid car?

We use infinitives after certain verbs, such as:

agree	continue	intend	offer	start
ask*	decide	learn	plan	try
attempt	expect*	like	prefer	want*
begin	forget	love	promise	
can't stand	hate	need*	remember	

*These verbs can be followed by an object before the infinitive.

They **want to plant** a garden. / They **want us to plant** a garden.

A. Circle the correct verb forms. Sometimes both the gerund and the infinitive are possible.

- Do you want (1. having / to have) a positive impact on the environment? I suggest (2. giving / to give) these steps a try:
- Do you hate (3. throwing / to throw) away old clothes in the garbage? Consider (4. giving / to give) clothes that no longer fit you to other people who can wear them.
- Quit (5. using / to use) disposable batteries. Begin (6. using / to use) rechargeable batteries.
- Learn (7. buying / to buy) products with less packaging. Attempt (8. buying / to buy) large containers of water, juice, and soda instead of individual serving-size containers.
- Learn (9. avoiding / to avoid) creating trash whenever possible. For example, when ordering food, avoid (10. taking / to take) any unnecessary utensils and napkins.
- Start (11. making / to make) a shopping list before you go shopping. This will help you stop (12. buying / to buy) things you don't need on impulse.
- Keep (13. reusing / to reuse) your supermarket bags.

3 Grammar

Gerunds After Verbs

- Students are familiar with the *-ing* form of verbs used with progressive verbs. Explain that the *-ing* form can also be used as a noun. When an *-ing* form is used as a noun, it is called a gerund.
- Write these sentences on the board:

We're eating more organic fruits now.

I prefer eating organic foods.

Elicit that in the first sentence *eating* is part of the present progressive verb *are eating*. In the second sentence, *eating* is used as a noun. It answers the question *What?* after the verb *prefer*.

- Have students read the explanation and the examples in the chart. Practice briefly by writing the following sentence starters on the board and calling on several students to complete them with gerunds.

I enjoy ____.

I can't stand ____.

Infinitives After Verbs

- Explain that infinitives can also be used as nouns. Have students read the explanation and examples in the chart.
- Write the following sentences starters on the board and call on students to complete them.

Yesterday I forgot to ____.

Last year I decided to ____.

- Have students look at the questionnaire on page 82 to find more examples of infinitives and gerunds. Possible answers include:

1: ...finish using your computer

2: I wouldn't consider using...

3: ...fruits and vegetables do you prefer eating? I prefer eating... / I prefer to eat...

7: I hate being cold!

8: Do you try to conserve water? I try to be aware... / I try hard to conserve water.

- Point out that some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund. The meaning of sentences with these verbs is almost the same with either the gerund or the infinitive. We can say, for example, either *I love studying* or *I love to study*. (One slight difference is that the person is more likely to use the gerund at the moment of doing the activity.)

- Have students review the lists of verbs and find those that are on both lists: (can't stand, hate, intend, like, love, prefer, start)

A

- Ask a volunteer to read the directions aloud. Then do the first sentence with the class as an example. Elicit the correct verb forms.
- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Then they compare answers with a partner.
- Note:** Students may find it overwhelming to think that they have to memorize these lists of verbs. Explain that as they hear and practice sentences with gerunds or infinitives, they will naturally begin to get accustomed to them and develop a sense of which form to use.

Answers

- to have
- giving
- throwing / to throw
- giving
- using
- using / to use
- to buy
- to buy
- to avoid
- taking
- making / to make
- buying
- reusing

6 Going Green

B

- Read the directions and do the first question with the class as an example. Elicit the response: *Yes, I think (or No, I don't think) cars will stop running on gas.* Write it on the board.
- Have students work individually to write their answers to the questions.
- Have students work in pairs or small groups. They should take turns asking and answering the questions. They should explain their answers by saying why and giving details and examples to support their ideas.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. Yes, I think that in the near future cars will stop running on gas.
2. Yes, I think that people will begin to change their habits of consumption.
3. Every day I try to remember to recycle trash, like bottles and paper bags.
4. I would like to quit driving long distances in my car.
5. I forget to bring a bag when I go to the grocery store.
6. Yes, I would consider growing my own vegetable garden.
7. I could stop buying water in bottles.
8. In the next decade, I hope to see energy consumption, waste, and pollution reduced.

C

- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Then elicit the first sentence from the class and write it on the board as an additional example: **We plan to set the air conditioner on a timer at night.** Point out that in this sentence the verb phrase *plan to set* takes the place of *going to set* in the original sentence.
- Have students work with a partner to rewrite the rest of the sentences. Have them read the finished sentences to each other to check them.
- Check answers by having students write the new sentences on the board. Elicit any corrections from the class.

Language Builder

Point out that with the verb *prefer*, we often use the structure *prefer X to Y*. For example: *I prefer reading to watching TV. I prefer chocolate ice cream to vanilla.*

Explain that in sentences 4 and 6, *keep + verb-ing* means to continue doing something. For example: *I'm going to keep trying until I succeed.*

Answers

1. We plan to set the air conditioner on a timer at night.
2. I prefer reading the news online to reading newspapers.
3. Arya recommends printing on both sides of the paper.
4. I can't believe I keep leaving the lights on.
5. I enjoy gardening.
6. We should keep finding ways to use less energy.

D

- Focus students' attention on the picture. With the class, brainstorm one or two things Faisal can do to be more green; for example, recycle cans and bottles. Have students work individually to write a paragraph. Tell them to check the lists of words in the grammar charts for words they can use to express their ideas. For example: *Faisal needs to..., Faisal should quit..., He should try to...*

Workbook

Assign pages 58-60 for practice with the grammar of the unit.



Teaching Tip

Most people agree that rote memorization is not usually the best learning strategy. The best learning happens as a result of practice—seeing and hearing words again and again in meaningful context.



Additional Activity

Have students choose five words from each list, verbs followed by gerunds and verbs followed by infinitives, and write an original sentence with each one. Call on volunteers to read their sentences aloud or write them on the board.

fun facts

Americans buy more than 28 million single-serving water bottles each year. Of these, fewer than 20 percent are recycled. What makes this worse is the fact that in the U.S. bottled water is not necessarily healthier than tap water. In fact, some brands of bottled water are, in fact, just tap water in a bottle. The energy used to make and transport all these bottles of water is more than 50 million barrels of oil per year. That oil could run 3 million cars for a year.

B. Answer the questions with complete sentences. Then discuss your answers.

1. Do you think cars will stop running on gas in the near future?
2. Do you think people will begin to change their habits of consumption?
3. What is something you try to do every day to help the environment?
4. What is something harmful to the environment that you want to quit doing?
5. What is something that you often forget to do?
6. Would you ever consider growing your own vegetable garden?
7. What is something you could stop buying?
8. What changes do you hope to see in the environment in the next decade?

C. Rewrite each sentence using the verb in brackets and a gerund or infinitive. Make any other necessary changes.

 From now on Jack is going to use only fluorescent light bulbs. (start)

Jack is going to start using only fluorescent light bulbs.

1. We're going to set the air conditioner on a timer at night. (plan)

2. I don't really read newspapers. I like reading the news online better. (prefer)

3. Arya thinks it's a good idea to print on both sides of the paper. (recommend)

4. I can't believe I left the lights on again. (keep)

5. Gardening is one of my favorite activities. (enjoy)

6. We should continue to find ways to use less energy. (keep)

D. Look at the picture. Write a paragraph about ways Faisal could change his habits to become more green. Use gerunds and infinitives.

 There are many things that Faisal can do to become more green.

First of all...



6 Going Green

4 Conversation



Jasim: That was a great garden barbecue! But there are soda cans everywhere. I'll help you clean up. Where do you keep your recycling bins?

Ibrahim: Nowhere. We don't recycle.

Jasim: You don't recycle! Why not?

Ibrahim: I don't know. It's just always seemed like it would be a **hassle**.

Jasim: Don't you think it would be a good idea to make the effort?

Ibrahim: I guess. I do feel kind of guilty about it. But then again, does it really make that much of a difference?

Jasim: Are you kidding? Recycling reduces energy consumption, lessens air and water pollution, and saves landfill space. It's a **no-brainer**.

Ibrahim: I just don't have the patience. It seems like a lot of extra work. It's so much easier to just **chuck** everything in the garbage than to sort it by material for recycling.

Jasim: That's a **lame** excuse. Recycling is a **piece of cake**. It becomes automatic before you know it.

Ibrahim: I suppose you're right. OK, OK. I'll start to recycle.

Jasim: Great! Hey, why are you throwing that can in the garbage?

Ibrahim: Whoops! Old habits are hard to break!



Real Talk

a hassle = something that is inconvenient to do

I guess. = an unenthusiastic way of agreeing with someone

a no-brainer = a question or problem that has an obvious answer or solution

chuck = throw out

lame = bad, inadequate

a piece of cake = very easy

About the Conversation

1. How does the subject of recycling come up?
2. What are some reasons Jasim gives for recycling?
3. Why does Ibrahim say "Whoops" at the end of the conversation?

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. What is something you do that is good for the environment? Suggest to your partner that he/she do this, too. Give reasons and use phrases for making suggestions.

Making Suggestions

You might want to consider + gerund...

How about + gerund...?

Don't you think it would be a good idea + infinitive...?

If you..., I think you'll find...

If you don't mind, I'd like to suggest+ gerund...

4 Conversation

- Draw students' attention to the picture. Ask: **What do you think has been happening here?** (Maybe people were having a barbecue or a picnic and threw all the cans and bottles in the trash.)
- Tell students they're going to listen to a conversation between two friends, Ibrahim and Jasim, cleaning up after a party.

- Play the audio. Have students listen with their books closed.
- Ask students: **Does Ibrahim recycle? Why or why not?** Make a few notes of students' answers on the board, but don't confirm or deny answers at this time.
- Play the audio again. Have students listen and read along in their books. Review the notes on the board and confirm the correct responses to the questions.

Real Talk

- Model the Real Talk expressions and discuss them with the class. Ask questions like the following:

What is it that Ibrahim thinks is a hassle? (recycling)

Do you agree?

How does Ibrahim's voice sound when he says I guess?

(He sounds a little bored, not enthusiastic.)

What's a no-brainer according to Jasim? (recycling)

Do you think that chuck is more or less formal than throw out? (It's less formal.)

What does Jasim mean when he says that Ibrahim is giving a lame excuse? (He means it is a bad or weak excuse.)

Do you ever give lame excuses for things you do?

What does Ibrahim mean when he says recycling is a piece of cake? (It's very easy.)

About the Conversation

- Discuss the questions with the class. Have students ask classmates the questions and elicit answers. For question 2, they should elicit answers from several students.

- Sit at one of the students' desks during the discussion. Ask some additional questions. For example:

**How do people that you know feel about recycling?
Are they more like Ibrahim or like Jasim?**

What do you do when you see someone throwing something away in the street, for example, chucking a plastic bottle onto the sidewalk?

Have you ever participated in something like a community or park clean-up day?

Answers

- Jasim and Ibrahim are cleaning up after a party and there are soda cans everywhere.
- Jasim says that recycling reduces energy consumption, lessens air and water pollution, and saves landfill space.
- Because Ibrahim accidentally threw a can into the garbage rather than recycling it.

Your Turn

- Ask a student to read the directions aloud.
- Focus students' attention on the phrases in the box. Explain that these phrases are often used as an introduction to making a suggestion. They assure the person you're speaking to that you're giving them a suggestion, not an order.
- Ask: **Which expression does Jasim use in the conversation?** (Don't you think it would be a good idea + infinitive...?)
- Brainstorm with the class a couple of ideas for topics they can use for their conversations.
- Have students work in pairs to role-play their conversations. As students are working, go around and check that they are using some of the phrases for making suggestions. Check also that students are not writing the conversations. Explain that this is intended as speaking practice, not writing.
- Invite one or two pairs to act out their conversations for the class. You might also have each pair act out their conversation for another pair.

5 Listening

- Tell students that they are going to listen to a talk on glass recycling. Ask students to read the sentences.
- Play the audio twice. The first time students just listen. The second time they mark the sentences *true* or *false*.
- Play the audio again for students to check their answers. Pause as necessary to discuss answers.

Answers

- false (It takes 1 million years.)
- true
- false
- false (It is separated by color.)
- true
- false (It is melted at 1,500 degrees Celsius.)
- true
- false (It reduces related air pollution by 20 percent and water pollution by 50 percent.)

Audioscript

Did you know that it takes one million years for a glass bottle to decompose? This is not surprising when you consider that glass is made mostly from silica, which is basically sand. Think of how long the average beach lasts! Yet tons of glass bottles and jars are simply thrown away each year. This is completely unnecessary as glass is 100 percent recyclable.

The process of recycling glass is quite simple. After recycle bins of glass are collected, they are taken to a recycling facility where the glass is separated by color. The glass is then cleaned and crushed. The crushed glass is called cullet. The cullet is shipped to a manufacturer who melts it at temperatures of about 2,700°F, or 1500°C, to form liquid glass. This liquid is then poured into molds in the shape of glass containers.

This simple process conserves both energy and natural resources, and produces far less pollutants than manufacturing glass from all new materials. Consider these statistics:

- Manufacturing glass from recycled materials saves 68 percent of the energy and half of the water normally required in the manufacturing process.
- Glass produced from recycled materials reduces related air pollution by 20 percent and water pollution by 50 percent.
- Recycling one glass bottle saves enough energy to light a 100-watt bulb for four hours.

So the next time you consider throwing a bottle of soda in the trash—think again! The glass containing your soda today could be the glass containing your salad dressing next month. If we want to live on a healthier planet, we need to recycle the materials we consume.

6 Pronunciation

- Play the audio for the explanation and the sentences. Students listen and read along.
- Play the audio for the sentences again. Have students listen and repeat, or speak along with the recording.

7 Vocabulary Building

A

- Have students work individually to match the words with the definitions. Tell them not worry if they don't know a word. They should first match the words they are pretty sure of and then guess the other words.

B

- Have students compare answers with a partner. When their answers are different or they don't know a word, they should look it up in a dictionary.

Answers

- e
- d
- f
- c
- g
- h
- b
- a

Workbook

Assign page 61 for additional reading practice.

Teaching Tip

Register that the appropriateness of language for different situations, is an important part of learning vocabulary. Students should know, for example, that to call an idea a "no-brainer" in an informal conversation among friends is fine, but would not be appropriate in an essay or a formal speech.

Additional Activity

Put students in pairs. Have them find a paragraph from a reading in an earlier unit. They work together to mark pauses and then take turns reading the paragraph to each other with pauses.



Many people like to collect sea glass. This is glass from broken bottles and other glass items that have been in water for a long time. It has become smooth and frosty-looking and can be very beautiful.

5 Listening



Listen to the information about glass recycling. Answer **true** or **false**.

1. _____ It takes 500 years for a glass bottle to decompose.
2. _____ Glass is made mostly from sand.
3. _____ Glass is not 100 percent recyclable.
4. _____ At recycling facilities, glass is separated by size.
5. _____ Crushed glass is called cullet.
6. _____ The manufacturer melts the glass at 500° Celsius.
7. _____ The liquid glass is poured into molds.
8. _____ Glass produced from recycled materials reduces related air pollution by 50 percent.



6 Pronunciation



Thought groups are meaningful phrases within sentences. They are usually made up of grammatical phrases such as relative clauses and noun, verb, and prepositional phrases. There is often a slight pause between thought groups. Listen and practice.

1. It takes / one million years / for a glass bottle / to decompose.
2. The process / of recycling glass / is quite simple.
3. This simple process / conserves both energy / and natural resources.
4. Recycling one glass bottle / saves enough energy / to light a 100-watt bulb / for four hours.

7 Vocabulary Building



A. You will see these words in the reading on pages 88 and 89. Match the words with their meanings.

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. _____ relying | a. loss of something for a specific purpose |
| 2. _____ utility | b. extremely large |
| 3. _____ bold | c. dedicated |
| 4. _____ committed | d. basic service supplied by a business or facility
such as electricity or running water |
| 5. _____ perspective | e. depending on |
| 6. _____ harsh | f. strong and courageous |
| 7. _____ enormous | g. a way of seeing something |
| 8. _____ sacrifice | h. severe, difficult |

- B. Check your answers with a partner. If you do not understand the meaning of a word, look it up in a dictionary.

8 Reading



Before Reading

Read the passage and underline ways that your country can replace utilities such as electricity, natural gas, and water from the local supply systems.



Living Off The Grid



Imagine heating your home without relying on the local power plant. Wouldn't it feel good to meet your need for electricity without harming the environment? For a growing number of people, these ideas have become reality. Out of concern for the environment and a desire for self-reliance, these people have made the bold decision to live off the grid.



What exactly is "the grid"? The grid, short for "the power grid," is the linked system that supplies electricity to most homes and buildings in developed nations. Homes that are off the grid are not hooked up to the local power supply. Instead, they produce all of the energy they consume. As a result, people living off the grid avoid the environmental and financial costs that come with on-grid living.

The key to getting off the grid is replacing electricity supplied by a power plant with a renewable energy

source, like wind or solar power. Buildings that use solar power have solar panels on the roof or near the building. When the sun's light hits the panels, the panels collect the energy. Wind power is collected by turbines, also known as windmills. When the wind blows, the blades move, producing energy which is turned into electricity by a generator.

Some people go even further off the grid. In addition to setting up a renewable energy source, they also have an independent source of water. They dig wells to access ground water or use a cistern, a type of tank, to collect rainwater. Those most committed to living off the grid may even lack garbage service. These people generally live a life that creates very little waste, growing their own organic fruits and vegetables, and raising chickens and goats for eggs and milk. By avoiding the consumption of packaged foods, they greatly reduce paper and plastic waste.

As challenging as it may be to live off the grid, most off-gridders feel that the benefits far outweigh the difficulties. Jorge and Ella Alvarez, off-gridders in Northern Arizona say, "We love being off-grid. It's definitely hard work, but it puts everything in life into perspective. It's surprising to find just how much you can do without. Many people think we have a harsh and depressing lifestyle. Nothing could be further from the truth. We see living off the grid as a gift that has allowed us to be more in touch with nature and each other."

This view is shared by Wendy Johnston, a mother of three, living off the grid with her family in Ontario, Canada. Wendy recalls, "In the house I grew up in, we would leave lights on all day, the thermostat up at night, and water running without a second thought. I wanted my children to be raised with more respect for the environment and an awareness of the impact that they have on it. My children don't take energy for granted. I love the fact that they are learning how to take care of the earth while, at the same time, learning to be self-sufficient."

8 Reading

- With books closed, ask if students have ever had the experience of living without things like electricity and running water for even a short period of time. What did they do? How did they adapt? Their parents or grandparents may also have told them about their experiences.
 - Have students look at the title and the photos. Remind them that they saw a photo of a wind farm at the start of the unit as well. Ask: **What is this?** **What does it do?** (It's a wind farm. It generates electricity.) Ask: **What do you think the grid is? What does it mean to live "off the grid"?** Elicit ideas and make notes on the board, but don't confirm or deny responses at this time. This will be explained in the article.
 - Have students scan the text to answer the **Before Reading** questions. Call on volunteers for answers.
-  Play the audio. Have students listen and read along in their books.
- Review the questions **What is the grid?** and **What does it mean to live off the grid?** Have students find and read the paragraph that explains this. (paragraph 2)
 - Note:** Explain to students that it's not important whether they knew the answers to the questions before they started to read or not. Just asking the question and thinking about it helped prepare them for reading.

READING STRATEGY Understanding long sentences

- Explain to students that long sentences can sometimes be challenging to a reader. Have students find these sentences in the article and answer questions about them. Whenever possible, have them restate ideas in their own words, rather than just repeating what's in the sentence.

Paragraph 1

Out of concern for the environment and a desire for self-reliance, these people have made the bold decision to live off the grid.

- Who are "these people"? (the growing number of people who aren't relying on the local power plant)
- What are two reasons they have decided to live off the grid? (They care about the environment and want to be more independent and self-reliant.)

Paragraph 2

When the wind blows, the blades move, producing energy which is turned into electricity by a generator.

- What are the blades? (the part of the windmill that moves)
- How does a windmill produce electricity? (The blades turn when the wind blows. This produces energy. Then a generator makes the electricity.)

Paragraph 5

I wanted my children to be raised with more respect for the environment and an awareness of the impact they have on it.

- Who does the pronoun *they* refer to? (Wendy Johnston's children)
- What are two things Wendy wants for her children? (She wants them to care for the environment and to know that things they do have an effect on it.)

Paragraph 7

But for the thousands of people who have made this bold choice, life off the grid is filled with rewards that can't be matched by the conveniences and luxuries of life on the grid.

- What is the "bold choice" referred to? (the decision to live off the grid)
 - What does the expression "can't be matched" mean? (It means that one thing is much better than another. In this case, the rewards of life off the grid are much better than the good things about life on the grid.)
- For additional vocabulary practice, discuss these words with the prefix *self-*. Have students find these expressions in the article and explain what they mean.
 - self-reliance** (doing things without help from other people)
 - self-sufficient** (producing or making everything you need without help from others)
 - Point out that *self* means a person's own nature or characteristics. It is also used in the reflexive pronouns *myself, yourself, etc.* Ask students: **What other words do you know that start with self?** Elicit answers or if students can't think of any words mention these: *self-defense, self-esteem, self-control, self-taught.*

6 Going Green

After Reading

- Give students a few minutes to read the article once more without interruption.
- Have students work with a partner and take turns asking and answering the questions.
- Check answers by calling on students to read a question and answer it.

Answers

1. electricity, natural gas, and water
2. the linked system that supplies electricity to most homes and buildings in developed nations
3. When the wind blows, windmills turn, producing energy which is turned into electricity by a generator.
4. concern for the environment and a desire for self-reliance
5. a private well or a cistern to collect rain water
6. by growing their own fruits and vegetables, and raising and tending animals for food

9 Speaking

- Ask students to copy the chart in the notebook.
- Put students in groups of three to ask and answer the questions. Each student should be responsible for asking one of the questions and eliciting answers.
- Give one student the role of reporter. That student will summarize the group's ideas for the class.
- Have reporters from each group report the group's ideas to the class.

Workbook

Assign pages 62-63 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Teaching Tip

Dictionaries are a useful tool for language learning, but students can overuse them. For example, when students try to look up too many words in a reading, it slows them down and makes the reading more difficult. Before students look up a word, they should ask themselves: *Do I really need to know the meaning of this word? Can I guess the meaning from context?*

Additional Activity

Play the Categories game. Draw a five-column chart on the board with the headings **Technology, Crime, Travel, TV, and Jobs**. (These are topics from Units 1 to 5 of this book.) Put students in groups of three and have each group make a copy of the chart. Start the game by saying a letter. Students then have to try to think of words in English that start with that letter related to each topic in the chart and write the words under the appropriate headings. Repeat this with different letters until students have filled in, or tried to fill in, four words for each category. The winner is the group with most appropriate words in the chart.

Project: Living Off the Grid

Have students work in groups to design a home that will be "off the grid." They decide how the home will get electricity and water. They can decide how self-sufficient the people in the home will be. For example, will they produce their own food? Have students present their plans to the class.



In 2006, it was estimated that there were 180,000 people in the U.S. living "off the grid." At that time, the number was growing by 33 percent a year. Worldwide, there are about 1.7 billion people who live off the grid. Of course, many of these were never on the grid in the first place!



Wendy admits that living off the grid has its difficulties. For example, the Johnston's power usually goes down a few times a year. However, Wendy reflects, "The funny thing is that these often turn out to be some of our best times as a family. The power outages have an unexpected way of bringing us closer together. We read books and play games by candlelight, or we get together and tell stories."

Living off the grid entails sacrifices, and is certainly not for everyone. But for the thousands of people who have made this bold choice, life off the grid is filled with rewards that can't be matched by the conveniences and luxuries of life on the grid.

After Reading

Answer the questions.

1. What are some public utilities that most of us rely upon?
2. Define "the grid."
3. How does wind energy work?
4. What are some reasons people choose to live off the grid?
5. What are two alternatives to using a public water utility?
6. How could someone reduce his or her waste?



9 Speaking



1. Work in groups. Discuss how a family can live off the grid in your country and use the chart to make notes.
2. Compare and discuss your ideas in class.

Public utility		Which is the easiest/hardest to do without?	What is an alternative to it in your home?	What is the most challenging aspect of not having it?	Does this appeal to you or not? Why? Why not?
1	local electricity supply				
2	cooking and heating gas				
3	local water supply				

10 Writing



A. How important is packaging for you as a consumer? Are you attracted to things that are packaged nicely? Why? Why not?

1. Read the essay and find out the following:

- What did the writer's family use to do that was not "green"?
- What did they do to change that practice?
- What were the benefits?
- Were there any disadvantages?

2. What is your view as a reader?

- Are ideas and information presented clearly?
- Does the writer provide explanations, examples, or reasons directly?
- Does the essay fulfill your expectations in relation to the title?

3. Look at the essay again and write which person is used in each paragraph: *I*, *you*, *he* or *she* and so on. What is the effect?

- Paragraph 1: _____
- Paragraph 2: _____
- Paragraph 3: _____

4. Notice which paragraph/s do the following:

- provide the writer's view and/or opinion
- provide objective information and/or view
- set the scene

5. Are there any passive forms? What are they used for?

6. How are ideas and facts connected? Provide examples from the text.

- conjunctions/linking words
- combined clauses/sentences
- use of pronouns

Going Green

I realized how sensible "going green" was when I started noticing the amount of waste accumulated from all the packaging. We're a family of three and we manage to accumulate a bagful of recyclable waste every day. We are careful to use a special disposal unit for recyclable materials, but we are not sure it is always effective. Is it actually recycled?

We decided to search for options. We found out that there were many stores near the central market that sold goods by weight out of large canisters or burlap bags. Rice, beans, flour, sugar, oil, butter, cheese, and a lot more are available

off the counter, free of packaging. When we compared prices, we decided to never look back.

A lot of time, money, and resources are invested in packaging as a way of making the product more attractive for consumers. Glossy wrappers, beautifully designed boxes, vacuum wrapped coffee, plastic containers, colorful lids, and a lot more, have a magnetic effect on buyers. We, on the other hand, have to label and fill our own containers, before we can put away our shopping. But, we make better use of cupboard space, spend a lot less, and protect the environment. You should try it!



10 Writing

A

- Direct students' attention to the pictures along the page. Elicit ideas from them about the types of packaging illustrated in the pictures. Have a class discussion on how 'green' such packaging is.
- Have students think about this question:
- Can we be relatively greener by changing some of our practices as consumers even if we don't fully live off the grid?
- Read directions for A with the class and elicit answers from volunteers.
- Tell students that they are going to read an essay about environmentally friendly consumer practices. Have them read the title and speculate/predict the kind of information they expect to find.
- Have them read the directions for task 1. Play the audio and have students listen and read.
- Have students answer the questions individually and then check with a partner.
- Read directions for 2 with the class and have students read the essay and answer the questions individually. Then ask them to check with a partner.

Answers

5. Passive forms are used to present information/facts in an objective, detached manner.
6. examples conjunctions/linking words: But, on the other hand combined clauses/sentences: ...are invested in packaging as a way of making the product more attractive, we are not sure it is always effective use of pronouns: We, I, it

Additional Activity

Have students think about the products they buy on a daily basis. Ask them to think about the packaging. Have them describe it and comment on it. Use these questions to help them.

- Are they all necessary?
Do they protect the product?
Are they made of natural materials?
Are they plastic?
Can they be recycled?**

Call on students to report their answers in class. Ask the rest of the class to listen and check their answers. Have them add different answers, modify the ones presented or challenge answers or views.

Answers

- Yes/ yes
- Answers will vary
- Organize students in pairs and have them read directions for 3 and 4. Explain that such questions are aimed at helping them notice features of different texts, how they are organized, how ideas are presented etc. Call on pairs to report answers/ideas for the class.

3. and 4. Answers

- **Paragraph 1:** I, we Sets the scene/ writer's view
- **Paragraph 2:** we Objective information
- **Paragraph 3:** we Objective information /writer's view
- Read directions for 5 and 6 with the class. Have students work in pairs to answer the questions and find examples in the text.
- Call on pairs to report their answers to the class.

6 Going Green

B

- Tell students that they are going to write a letter to the editor of a local newspaper. Tell them that the purpose of the letter is to complain about the neighborhood and suggest how it could go greener.
- Go through directions for tasks 1, 2 and 3. Organize students in small groups and ask them to think about and discuss things that they do which are not green. Remind them to make sure there is at least one person making notes in the group as they discuss. Ask them to make notes in the appropriate column in the chart.
- Call on one student from each group to present the negative practices of the group.
- Have groups study their list of negative practices and decide on changes they can make to become greener. Ask them to make notes in the appropriate column in the chart.
- Explain to students that some practices might simply require them to stop doing something, for example, throwing away paper but other practices might involve a number of steps that can lead to the desirable outcome. For example: cycling instead of driving. Have groups make notes on necessary steps that need to be taken to make the change. Give groups time to discuss and finalize ideas.
- Call on a volunteer from each group to report the group's decisions and ideas in class. Have the other groups listen and modify or add to their notes.
- Finally, ask students to discuss what their local council can do to help everyone to go greener. Students should make notes in the third column of the chart and report their ideas to the class.
- Direct students to the Writing Corner. Have them read each point and discuss.
- Remind them how important it is to reflect and give them time to think about what they know. Point out that the initial notes they make while they brainstorm don't have to be perfectly organized. They can be used as raw data to help them remember and organize later as mentioned in the guidelines.
- Direct students to the outline of a model letter on page 77 and have them draft their letters. Circulate and monitor; help when necessary.
- Give students time to read their letters and make comments and corrections individually before they exchange with other students.

- Have students exchange drafts and comment/correct each other's texts. Then ask them to edit and rewrite.
- Call on volunteers to read their letters in class. Have the rest of the students listen and make a note of the changes that are planned, the similarities and differences between letters.

Workbook

Assign page 64 for additional writing practice above word and sentence level.

- B.**
1. Write a letter to the editor of your local newspaper. Complain about your neighborhood and suggest how it could 'go greener.' With a partner, discuss the items below:
 2. Think about things you do that are environmentally harmful. What do other people in your neighborhood do? What can your local council do to help you 'go greener'?
 3. Use the chart to make notes and then use it to write your letter.
 4. Exchange drafts/essays and edit.
 5. Improve, change, and rewrite.

Environmentally harmful practices	'Go greener' practices	Steps our local council can take to help



Writing Corner

When you write a formal letter of complaint:

- open in an appropriate way: Dear Editor, Dear Mr. Smith.
- state the reason why you are writing and give a brief overview of the situation.
- use phrases to introduce and list additional points: First of all...; Moreover...; Furthermore, ...;
- use phrases to offer suggestions and solutions to problems: I suggest that ...; It would be a good idea if ..., One solution is ... and so on.
- sign off in an appropriate way: With best wishes; Your sincerely; Sincerely yours; Yours faithfully.

11 Form, Meaning and Function



Simple Present Tense

Use the simple present tense for facts or things that are true in general.

The Saudi Riyal (RS) **is** the official currency of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

It **takes** one million years for a glass bottle to decompose.

My parents **don't read** printed newspapers anymore.

Does Qatar **belong** to the United Arab Emirates?

Simple Present versus Present Progressive

Use the simple present to talk about habits or routines.

Use the present progressive for actions occurring now or for a temporary situation.

The temperatures **change** with the seasons of the year. (*habit or routine*)

The temperatures in the poles **are changing** drastically. (*happening now*)

PERMANENT

TEMPORARY

John **lives** in Quebec, but he **is studying** in France this year.

Note: Some verbs are not often used in the progressive form:

believe, forget, hear, know, like, love, need, prefer, remember, see, understand, want, realize.

Time Expressions for the Present

We are **currently** studying for examinations.

Most people recycle **these days**.

At present there are measures in place to tackle climate change.

Air travel is more affordable **now** than it was in the past.

- A.** Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs.

1. Water _____ at 100 °C (212 °F). (boil)
2. The water _____. Please turn it off. (boil).
3. The scientists _____ the cause of the problem. (not/understand)
4. _____ in your country in winter? (it/snow)
5. The moon _____ around Earth. (go)
6. What _____ of my idea? (you/think)
7. Currently, the number of immigrants in our country _____. (increase)
8. Most people _____ how important it is to conserve energy these days. (realize)
9. Dubai is part of the UAE, but it _____ as many oil reserves as Abu Dhabi. (not/have)
10. Ahmed has a part-time job on Saturdays, but he _____ today. (not/work)

- B.** Look at the words in the box describing geographical features and green issues. Write sentences about some of the environmental problems the world is facing. Use the present simple and present progressive tense.

L Flying **is becoming** a popular way to travel **these days**. This **increases** a person's carbon footprint on quite a massive scale.

climate change • polar ice caps • oceans and fishing • carbon footprint • air travel
deforestation • deserts • erosion • flooding • lakes • pollution • rivers



11 Form, Meaning and Function

Simple Present Tense

- Go over the material in the presentation. Explain that we use the simple present to talk about things that are true in general, or happen all the time.

Language Builder

Explain the spelling rules for adding -s or -es to simple present verbs used with *he*, *she*, and *it*.

- For verbs ending in s, x, z, ch, and sh: add -es (relaxes).
- For verbs do and go: add -es (does, goes).
- For verbs ending in a consonant + y: change the y to i and add -es (studies).
- For verbs ending in a vowel + y: add -s (enjoys).
- For all other verbs: add -s (designs, organize).

Simple Present versus Present Progressive

- Go over the material in the presentation for the present progressive used for an action that is happening now. Have students say things that they are doing right now. Model a few possibilities. For example: *I'm standing at the front of the room. I'm speaking English.*
- Remind students about the verbs not usually used in the progressive form.

Time Expressions for the Present

- Call on students to read the example sentences and write the time expression on the board: *currently, these days, at present, now*.
- Ask students to form four sentences of their own using each time expression.
- Students compare with a partner.

A

- Tell students to complete the exercise alone and compare their answers with a partner.
- Call on a volunteer to read out their sentences to the class.
- Ask the class to raise their hand if they hear an error. Encourage peer correction.

Answers

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. boils | 5. goes | 9. doesn't have |
| 2. is boiling | 6. do you think | 10. isn't working |
| 3. don't understand | 7. is increasing | |
| 4. Does it snow | 8. realize | |

B

- Go through the words and phrases in the box and elicit or explain the meaning of any unknown vocabulary items.
- Draw students' attention to the example given. As a class, elicit some more examples on the board.

Answers

Students' own answers.

Language Builder

We use the simple present to talk about permanent actions like habits or routines. We often use frequency expressions such as: *always, usually, often, rarely, never, every day, once a month, on weekends*.

We use the present progressive to talk about temporary actions that are happening now. We often use time expressions such as: *right now, now, at the moment*.

We use the present perfect to talk about actions that have happened at an indefinite time in the past or actions that have happened from the past up to now. We often use time expressions such as: *ever, never, so far, yet*.

We use the simple past to talk about actions that were completed in the past. We often use time expressions such as: *yesterday, last week, two days ago, a year ago, in the 19th century, in 2014*.

6 Going Green

Conditional Sentences with Present and Future Forms

- Have volunteers read aloud the example sentences in the presentation.
- Explain that when we use *if* to talk about present facts, *if* means *whenever*. Elicit the verb forms in the if-clause and the main clause. (simple present + simple present).
- When we use *if* to talk about the future, *if* means something may or may not happen. Elicit the verb forms in the if-clause and the main clause. (simple present + will/be going to + verb). Emphasize that we use the simple present in the if-clause even though we are talking about the future.
- Elicit the difference in meaning between an if-clause + may/might (the second event is not certain to happen if the event in the if-clause happens) and an if-clause + will (the second event is certain to happen if the event in the if-clause happens).
- Write one of the example sentences from the presentation on the board and elicit the question form. Point out that the Wh-question can come before or after the *if* clause. For example,
(If Nura doesn't do her homework, she may fail the class). What will happen if Nura doesn't do her homework? OR If Nura doesn't do her homework, what will happen?
- Ask students to choose other examples and practice forming conditional questions. For example,
What happens if (when) you cook an egg in the microwave?

I'd Rather

- Have volunteers read aloud the conversation. Elicit the meaning of *would rather* (= prefer). Explain that we use the base form of the verb after *would rather* but the infinitive after *prefer*. Point out that the negative of *would rather* is *would rather not*. For example: *I would rather not drive there.*

C

- Before students write anything, have them look at the sentences one at a time. Elicit whether each one refers to a present fact or a future fact. Have students underline the if-clause in each sentence and circle the main clause. Check that students remember which verb forms to use in the different types of sentences.

- Have students do the task individually and compare answers in pairs.
- Walk around and monitor that students are writing the correct verb forms.

Answers

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. heat, boils | 4. get, will see |
| 2. climb, will need | 5. mix, end up |
| 3. don't cross, will not bite | 6. doesn't obey, will get |

D

- Have students skim the parts of sentences and answer any questions about vocabulary.
- Have students work in pairs to talk about what will possibly or probably happen in each situation.
- As an extension, give students a few minutes to complete the sentences in writing. Then have students switch partners and ask each other yes/no questions about the sentences. For example: *If we don't reduce carbon emissions, will pollution increase to fatal levels?*

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. global warming will get worse | 4. the fish will die |
| 2. they will know better how to protect the environment in the future | 5. we will save money on petrol |
| 3. we will reduce our carbon emissions | 6. Students' own answers. |
| | 7. Students' own answers. |
| | 8. Students' own answers. |

Workbook

Assign pages 65-66 for more practice with the form, meaning and function of the structures in the unit.



Teaching Tip

When dividing students into groups, four or five students per group should normally be the maximum number. If groups are any bigger, it can be difficult for all of the members to participate effectively in the activity.

Conditional Sentences with Present and Future Forms

You can use conditional sentences with *if* to talk about causes and results.

Present Facts

Use the *simple present tense* in both clauses.

If you **cook** an egg in the microwave, it **explodes**.

If you **put** water in the freezer, it **becomes** ice.

Future Facts

Use the *simple present* in the *if*-clause and the *future with be going to* or *will* in the result clause.

If we **don't take** measures now, the oceans **will** soon be completely depleted of fish.

If Imad **doesn't go** to college, he's **going to be** very sorry.

May/Might

Use *may/might* in the result clause to suggest something is possible, but not certain.

If Nura doesn't do the homework, she **may fail** the class.

If Imad doesn't go to college, he **might not get** a good job.

I'd Rather

Use I'd rather (= *I would rather*) to talk about preferences.

A: Would you rather go to the mall now or later?

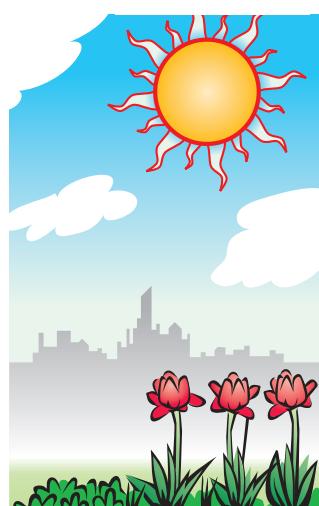
B: I'd rather go now.

C. Complete the sentences about facts. Use the simple present or *will* in the second clause.

1. If you _____ (heat) water to 100 degrees Celsius, it _____ (boil).
2. If they _____ (climb) up to 4,000 meters, they _____ (need) oxygen.
3. If you _____ (not cross) its path, the snake _____ (not bite) you.
4. If we _____ (get) this HD television, we _____ (see) the game better.
5. If you _____ (mix) flour and water, you _____ (end up) with batter.
6. If he _____ (not obey) the speed limit, he _____ (get) a ticket.

D. Work with a partner. Say what *will/might* happen in the following situations.

1. If we don't reduce carbon (CO₂) emissions, _____.
2. If we teach young children in school about green issues, _____.
3. If we find alternative sources of energy, _____.
4. If we dump chemicals into the river, _____.
5. If we take the bus to school, _____.
6. If we have time, _____.
7. Your idea: _____.
8. Your idea: _____.



6 Going Green

12 Project

1. Design and make posters promoting **Going Green** in your school.
2. Work in pairs or groups. Research conditions, practices, and places in your school that are not environmentally friendly, e.g. rooms where the lights or air conditioners remain switched on when not in use, leaking taps that waste water, lack of litter bins in certain areas, etc.
3. Research and complete the chart with information and details about the place.
4. Use the organizer to make notes. Then use your notes to prepare your poster.

When you make a poster, remember to:

- research and find suitable photos and pictures, or draw your own; consider other options such as making a collage with a series of pictures/photos
- write short texts and/or slogans using your notes/ideas
- use font that is large enough for people to read when the poster is on the wall
- be selective; do not try to fit too much in because people who see it will miss the point you are trying to make
- print out or write texts on separate sheets of paper so you can compose your poster in a more imaginative manner
- include some realia, if appropriate, by gluing or attaching things to your poster, e.g. used up wrappers, used up markers, used up batteries, etc.



Let's go green!

A condition, place, or practice in school that is harmful to the environment	The reasons it is harmful	What students can do to make it greener	Pictures/images we can use in our poster

12 Project



- Have students look at the photos and identify what is in them. Ask them to give reasons for their answers. Elicit answers from volunteers and list ideas on the board.
- Organize students in groups and have them brainstorm on practices that can change to contribute to a greener behaviour at their school or in their neighborhood.
- Read directions for tasks 1 and 2 and have students write as much information as they can in the organizer. Encourage them to research and add information.
- Ask students to download and print information that they find on the Internet as well as any promotional material or leaflets with information about greener practices. Tell them to include source material in Arabic if they need to use more information. Explain, however, that the information will need to be transferred to English. Point out that projects on greener schools have been launched recently with impressive results.
- Organize students in groups and have them make a checklist that they can use to research their school. Tell them to use the examples listed in 2 and add their own ideas.
- Go through directions for tasks 3 and 4. Elicit ideas and guidelines about poster presentations from volunteers. Go through the checklist of points to remember when making a poster. Have them reflect on things that did not go as well as they might have wanted and avoid repeating mistakes.
- Call on a student from each group to present the group's ideas for the class.
- Have groups make decisions and assign tasks to members of the group. Encourage them to communicate after school in order to talk to each other about what they found and coordinate the next stage in their preparation.
- Remind students that they will need a large sheet of paper (e.g. the size used for flip charts) or a large sheet of cardboard. Remind them that they will need short texts and captions for their poster.

- Allow time for research. This means that if students don't have access to the internet or would like to take photos of certain places they will not be able to complete their poster. In this case it would be advisable to ask them to share the tasks they need to complete, do the research, collect information and visuals and complete the poster for the next lesson.
- Call on each group to present their poster. Suggest that they take turns presenting each item that they have researched and collected information about.
- Display the posters on the wall if you can. Have students choose the poster they like best.

Additional Activity

 Research and find out how people lived in the past, about a century ago. Find out where they bought food? Whether they grew their own vegetables and fruit, if products were packaged and how, what kind of materials were used for packaging, what kind of energy was used for heating, production, cooking etc. Compare life in the past with life off the grid. Identify similarities and differences and present them in class. Have a class discussion commenting on the similarities and differences.

13 Self Reflection



- Write 'Going Green' on the board and elicit as many ideas and words as possible from the class. List the words on the board.
- Have students scan pages 82 and 83. Ask them to think about things they liked and things they disliked about this part of the unit. Use questions to help them remember. For example:
How do you choose vegetables and fruit?
Do you use plastic bags for shopping? What do you do after you use them?
What do you do with old batteries? Do you throw them in the bin?
Do you leave the tap on when you brush your teeth?
- Give students time to make notes about likes and dislikes and easy or difficult items in the section.
- Before directing students to pages 84, 85, ask them to complete some sentences. For example:
The leaflet recommends _____ the computer when it is not in use.
It is worth attempting _____ water by turning the tap off when you are finished.
They don't intend _____ a large expensive car.
Have volunteers complete the sentences. Elicit more examples from students after you give them a couple of minutes to think.
- Discuss the grammar of the unit with the class. Call on volunteers to say if they found it easy or difficult and give reasons.
- Have students make notes in the Self Reflection chart. Ask them to focus on likes, dislikes and easy or difficult items.
- Direct students to pages 86, 87. Call on volunteers to say what the conversation is about in this lesson, for example: future career plans, future study plans, future homes and appliances
- Have students say what they remember from this section and make notes in the chart.
- Write Living Off The Grid on the board and brainstorm on language and information that students remember. Call on volunteers to list as much as possible on the board.
- Organize students in pairs and ask them to answer questions like these:
What is your opinion about living off the grid?
Do you think you could live off the grid? Why? Why not?

Could you give up electricity and packaged goods? Why? Why not?

- Have students complete their Self Reflection charts as before about likes, dislikes and things they found easy or difficult.
- Before directing students to 10 Writing ask them to say what they remember about alternative sources of energy if one decides to live off the grid. Give them some time to work in pairs and then call on volunteers to answer.
- Have students scan pages 90 and 91 and make notes as before.
- Direct students to the 12 Project page and hold a discussion about what they found more or less useful and more or less interesting. Hold a class discussion about project work. Elicit ideas from the students and have them present their experiences for the class.
Did they have difficulty making decisions in their group? Why? Why not?
Did they feel that they had the chance to present their ideas?
Was it difficult or easy to collect information? Why? Why not?
Where did they find information? Where did they find photos?
Did they enjoy the poster presentation? Would they change anything if they had the chance to do it again? What?
Did they enjoy designing the poster? Did everyone contribute?
Was there room for originality and creativity? Why? Why not?
- Allow time for students to make notes on the project section individually. Then have them check with a partner.
- Have students fill out the checklist alone and write their five favorite words.
- Discuss areas that students feel they need more work on and make suggestions.

13 Self Reflection



Things that I liked about Unit 6:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 6:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 6:

Unit 6 Checklist	I can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/practice more.
evaluate how "green" I am			
discuss ways to be environmentally responsible			
make suggestions			
use gerunds after verbs			
use infinitives after verbs			
express preferences with <i>I'd rather</i>			
use simple present tense and the present progressive			
use conditional sentences with present and future forms			

My five favorite new words from Unit 6:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 6:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • read through the unit again • listen to the audio material • study the grammar and functions from the unit again • ask your teacher for help

EXPANSION Units 4–6

1 Language Review

A. Circle **for** or **to** to complete each sentence.

1. He bought a gift (for / to) each contestant.
2. Then he gave a gift (for / to) each contestant at the end of the episode.
3. Could you lower the thermostat (for / to) me?
4. Could you also hand the phone (for / to) me?
5. Our teacher pronounced the word (for / to) us.
6. Then she gave the worksheet (for / to) us.



B. Change the position of the indirect object in each sentence.

Add **for** or **to**.

 Please pass me the salt.

Please pass the salt to me.

1. My friend told me a great joke.
2. The boy wrote his mother a poem.
3. My grandfather's neighbor buys him groceries whenever he is sick.
4. The prosperous old woman gave the charity a fortune.
5. My parents threw me a dinner banquet when I graduated.

C. Use the verb or phrase in parentheses to rewrite each sentence a different way using the subjunctive.

 You should put on sunscreen before lying out in the sun.
(recommend)

I recommend that you put on sunscreen before lying out in the sun.

1. You must take this medication every day to get rid of the infection. (it is essential)
2. Supporters of organic farming say farmers should not use pesticides on their crops. (suggest)
3. My mother tells people to take off their shoes before they enter our house. (insist)
4. When I have a dinner party, I tell each guest to bring an appetizer or a dessert. (ask)
5. If you want to conserve water, you should not leave the water running when you brush your teeth. (it is important)
6. The viewers wanted the TV station to broadcast the program again. (request)





Unit Goals

Language Review

Reading

The Psychology
of Color

Language Plus

Writing

Write about
cultural meanings
of color, symbols,
customs, or gestures

1 Language Review

A

- This exercise reviews the use of *for* and *to* with indirect objects, which was presented in Unit 4. Refer students to the grammar chart on page 56 for review.
- Write these sentences on the board and elicit the words that go in the blanks.

Carol made a cake ____ **her.** (for)

She handed a piece of the cake ____ **her.** (to)

- Have students work individually to circle the correct word for each sentence.

Answers

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. for | 3. for | 5. for |
| 2. to | 4. to | 6. to |

B

- This exercise reviews direct and indirect objects, which were presented in Unit 4. Refer students to the grammar chart on page 56 for review as necessary.
- Refer back to the sentences on the board from exercise A. Elicit another way to write each one:

Carol made her a cake.

She handed her a piece of the cake.

For each sentence, ask: **What's the direct object?** (cake/a piece of cake) **What's the indirect object?** (her) Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example.

- Have students work individually to rewrite the sentences. Check answers by having students write the sentences on the board.

Answers

- My friend told a great joke **to** me.
- The boy wrote a poem **for** his mother.
- My grandfather's neighbor buys groceries **for** him whenever he is sick.
- The prosperous old woman gave a fortune **to** the charity.
- My parents threw a dinner **for** me when I graduated.

C

- This exercise reviews the subjunctive forms presented in Unit 5. Refer students to the chart on page 70 for review as necessary.
- Remind students of the important points about the subjunctive: 1) It is used to stress the urgency and importance of an action. 2) It uses the base form of the verb for all persons, including third person singular. (*I asked that he tell me the truth.*) 3) The negative is formed with *not* before the verb. (*It's important that they not be in a hurry.*)
- Ask a volunteer to read aloud the directions and the example. Point out that the modal *should* is not used with the subjunctive. The meaning of *should* is contained in the word *recommend*.
- Have students work with a partner to rewrite the sentences. Invite pairs to write their sentences on the board.

Answers

- It is essential that you take this medication every day to get rid of the infection.
- Supporters of organic farming suggest that farmers not use pesticides on their crops.
- My mother insists that people take off their shoes before they enter our house.
- When I have a dinner party, I ask that each guest bring an appetizer or a dessert.
- If you want to conserve water, it is important that you not leave the water running when you brush your teeth.
- The viewers requested that the TV station broadcast the program again.

D

- This exercise reviews the structures *I'd like you + infinitive* and *I want you + infinitive* which are presented in Unit 5. Refer students to the chart on page 70 for review as necessary.
- Remind students that it is incorrect to use a *that*-clause in these sentences:
Incorrect: *I want that you tell me the answer.*
Correct: *I want you to tell me the answer.*
- Ask a volunteer to read the directions and the example. Explain that a *tailor* is someone who makes or alters clothes for individual customers.
- Have students work with a partner to write sentences. If time allows, have them write two sentences for each item, one with *want* and the other with *would like*. Encourage them to use their imaginations.
- Check answers by having several students write sentences on the board.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- I want you to floss every day.
- I'd like you to keep a journal of your feelings.
- I want you to tell me everything that happened.
- I'd like you to talk to the customers more.
- I want you to do more chores around the house.
- I'd like you to stand over here.

E

- This exercise reviews verbs followed by gerunds or infinitives, which were presented in Unit 6. Refer students to the chart on page 84 for review as necessary.
- Remind students that in these sentences the gerunds and infinitives act as nouns and answer the question *What?* Write the following examples on the board and have students identify the gerund and the infinitive.

Aisha can't stand waiting hours for a bus.

Faisal promised to help carry these boxes.

- Ask: **What is it that Aisha can't stand?** (waiting hours for a bus) **What did Faisal promise?** (to help carry the boxes)
- Have students work individually to circle the correct verb forms. If both forms are possible, have them circle both. If they are unsure of an answer, tell them to refer to the chart on page 84.

Answers

- watching
- to help
- to get
- using
- to stay
- buying
- noticing / to notice
- using
- to learn
- having

F

- Read the directions and focus students' attention on the pictures. What can they learn about Dave and Jasmin from the pictures? Brainstorm a few ideas and make some notes on the board. Stress that this is just to get them started. They will need to think of more ideas to write their paragraphs.
- The following are two options for completing this activity.

Option 1: Assign this activity for homework and have each student write two paragraphs, one about Jasmin and one about Dave. Tell students they should use as many of the verbs as possible in their paragraphs, but not to worry if they don't use them all.

Option 2: Have half the students write about Dave and the other half write about Jasmin. Then put students in pairs, one who has written about Dave with one who has written about Jasmin, and have them read their paragraphs to each other. How did they use the verbs in the box?

Answers

Answers will vary.

- As an extension, remind students that the *-ing* form is also used in progressive verb forms. Read these sentences aloud. Have students raise one finger if the *-ing* form is a gerund, and two fingers if it's part of a progressive verb.
 - Charlie's playing computer games.** (progressive)
 - I prefer watching television.** (gerund)
 - We'll continue playing the game after dinner.** (gerund)
 - Our team is playing another game on Saturday.** (progressive)
 - The teacher is giving the exam tomorrow, not today.** (progressive)
 - She considered giving the exam next week.** (gerund)

Workbook

Assign pages 67–69 for review of vocabulary and grammar presented in Units 4–6.

D. Write a sentence that each person might say to the other using *I'd like you + infinitive* or *I want you + infinitive*.

💡 a customer to a tailor

I'd like you to shorten these pants about an inch.

1. a dentist to a patient
2. a therapist to a client
3. a lawyer to a witness
4. a manager to a salesperson
5. a father to a teenage son
6. a photographer to a person being photographed

E. Circle the correct verb forms. Sometimes both the gerund and the infinitive forms are correct.

1. We enjoy (watching / to watch) silly game shows.
2. Did you agree (helping / to help) her plan the dinner?
3. After working for the company for 8 years, he's finally decided (getting / to get) a different job.
4. The gardener is going to quit (using / to use) pesticides on his vegetables.
5. I'm only planning (staying / to stay) here for an hour or two.
6. I avoid (buying / to buy) products that have a lot of packaging.
7. When did you start (noticing / to notice) the symptoms?
8. My supermarket just stopped (using / to use) plastic bags.
9. After winning the grand prize in racing, he needed (learning / to learn) to relax and take it easy.
10. I keep (having / to have) a dream about taking an exam that I'm not prepared for!

F. Look at the pictures. Write short paragraphs about Dave and Jasim.

Use the verbs from the box + a gerund or infinitive.

avoid
decide

enjoy
intend

keep
learn

plan
prefer

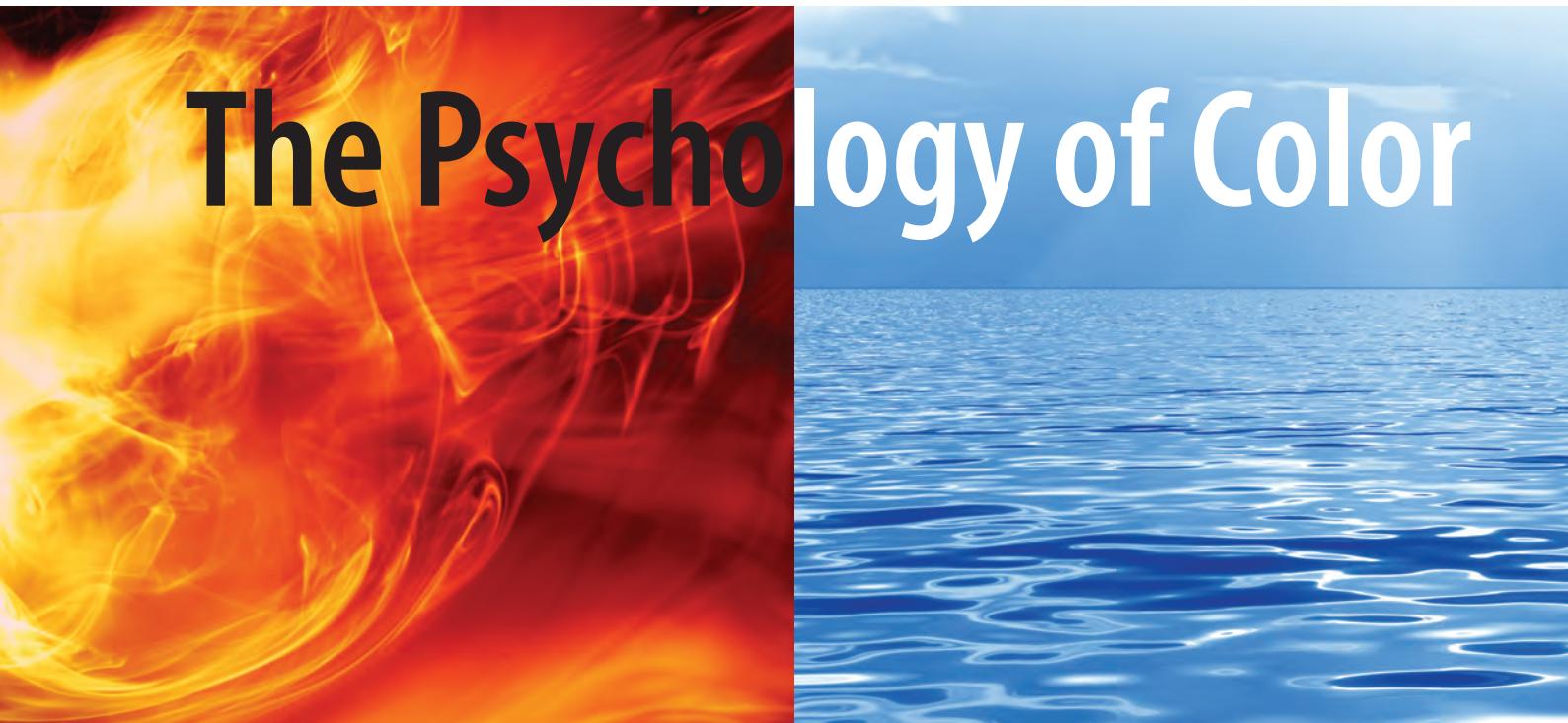


2 Reading



Before Reading

1. What color is the room you are in now? How does the color make you feel?
2. Have you ever painted a room? If so, what color did you choose and why?



I want you to imagine yourself in a room painted a light blue color. Now, imagine yourself in a vibrant red room. Do you think you would feel differently in each of these rooms? If you are like most people, you would feel calmer in the blue room and more energized in the red room. Why is this? Psychological studies have found that different colors can have different effects on mood and behavior.

People have a tendency to associate colors with where these colors appear in nature. So, for example, without realizing it we associate soft shades of blue with the sky and sea. These associations make blue a calming color for most people. Asuka Obata runs a spa in Kyoto, Japan. All the walls of the salon are blue. Obata says, "It is essential that we create a sense of peace and tranquility. The color blue helps us achieve this."

Red, however, is associated with fire and blood. So red is also associated with danger and vitality. The color red has even been shown to raise blood pressure! Adrian Vilas of Cordoba, Argentina, painted his office red. He says, "I like being surrounded by a color that gives me energy and inspiration." On the other hand, have you ever wondered why traffic lights and stop signs utilize the color red? To warn of danger, of course.

While we all share natural associations with certain colors, the same color may have a very different meaning to people of two different cultures.

The colors black and white provide a good example of how people can have different cultural responses to colors. In many cultures, black symbolizes death and mourning, and so black is the traditional color worn to funerals. However, in Asia it is not black that represents mourning, but white. So in Asia, white is the color people usually wear when they attend funerals.

2 Reading

- With books closed, have a class discussion about colors. Ask a few students: **What is your favorite color? Why?** Discuss the **Before Reading** questions:
 - What color is the room you are in now? How does the color make you feel?**
 - Have you ever painted a room? If so, what color did you choose and why?**

READING STRATEGY

Understanding the organization of an article

- Note:** For this activity, it is important that students not read the article before the start of the class.
- Make enough copies of the article to have one copy for every five students. Cut the article up into separate paragraphs. (Keep paragraphs 4 and 5 together, as paragraph 4 has only one sentence.) Label the first paragraph as the Introduction, but don't number or label the other paragraphs.
- Put students in groups of five and give each student one of the paragraphs in the article. Appoint one student as the group leader and give this student a copy of the introductory paragraph as well. (If it doesn't work out to divide the class into groups of five, you can have a group of four and give one student two paragraphs, or a group of six and have two students share a paragraph.)
- Explain that their task is to put the paragraphs in the correct order. The leader will start by reading aloud the introductory paragraph. Then each member of the group will read his or her paragraph to the group. They discuss and decide which paragraph should be next. They continue in this way until they have all the paragraphs in a logical order. When they disagree, students should read the relevant paragraphs again.
- As students are working, go around the room and answer questions about vocabulary. Try to make sure that all students in each group are participating and re-reading their paragraphs as necessary.
-  When all of the groups have put the paragraphs in order, play the audio of the article. Have students listen and check their order.

- Discuss the activity with the class. Ask: **How did you decide on the correct order?** As students answer, elicit these points:
 - The article discusses the natural effects of colors, related to their appearance in nature and the special effects of colors related to culture.
 - The first sentence of paragraph 2 is a topic sentence that leads to a discussion of the color blue.
 - Paragraph 3 begins with the phrase *Red*, however and goes on to discuss the color red. This indicates that it comes after the paragraph about the color blue.
 - Paragraph 4, the single sentence, introduces the topic, color and culture. The topic sentence of paragraph 5 introduces black and white as examples.
 - Paragraph 6 discusses the cultural meanings of the colors white and red.
 - Paragraph 7 is the conclusion.
- For additional vocabulary practice, work with noun and verb forms from the article.
- Explain to students that words, like people, often occur in families. Words are related to each other because they come from a common root. Write this chart on the board and have students copy it in their notebooks. Then have them find the related noun or verb forms in the article and write them in the chart.

Nouns	Verbs
energy	
	associate
creation	
	inspire
symbol	
	mourn
	celebrate
response	

(Answers: energize, association, create, inspiration, symbolize, mourning, celebration, respond)

After Reading

A

- Have students look at the list of words and find each word in the article. Discuss each word and elicit the meaning appropriate for the context.

paragraph 1

vibrant = bright, full of energy; Red is a bright, vibrant color.

paragraph 2

tendency = an inclination or leaning toward something; Associating colors with nature is something people have a tendency to do.

associate = relate one thing to another; Here people associate colors in nature to certain feelings.

tranquility = calmness, peacefulness; Tranquility is a feeling that is associated with blue.

paragraph 5

mourning = feeling of sadness when someone has died; Black represents mourning in some cultures.

represents = is a symbol of or stands for something; Here black represents death.

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences.
- Check answers by calling on students to read the sentences aloud.

Answers

- represents
- mourning
- tendency
- vibrant
- tranquility
- associate

B

- Put students in groups of three to ask and answer the questions.
- Check answers by having groups report their answers to the class. Have students support their answers by referring back to the parts of the article with the correct information.

Answers

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- The color blue appears in the sky and the sea. The color red appears in fire and blood.
- Blue is a calming color. Red is an energizing color.
- In most cultures, white represents purity, innocence, and goodness.
- In China, white is the color of mourning.
- In Chinese culture, red represents happiness and good luck. People wear red to celebrate the Chinese New Year.

Discussion

- Put students into small groups to discuss the questions and complete the chart.
- When students have finished their charts, have them pass the charts from group to group around the room. Students look at the other groups' charts and compare them with their own. Discuss the charts with the class.

Culture Note

Green is believed to be an easy color to see and restful for the eyes. At one point in the U.S., classroom blackboards were changed to "greenboards." People thought it was easier to see the white chalk on the greenboard. Street and highway signs in the U.S. often have a green background with white letters. There have also been interesting experiments with children who have difficulty reading. Researchers have found that putting a transparent green overlay on top of what the child is reading often improves comprehension. They believe the reason for this is that for some children the white background is too reflective and this makes it difficult for them to see the black letters.

Workbook

Assign pages 70-71 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

In most other cultures, far from being associated with funerals, white represents purity, innocence, and goodness. For this reason, white is traditionally worn by brides in these cultures. However, in China, since white is the color of mourning, it is important that a bride *not* wear white. Instead, the traditional color worn by a bride in China is red. In Chinese culture, red represents happiness and good luck, and so Chinese celebrations are full of red. During the Chinese New Year, people prefer wearing red to any other color and older family members give money in red envelopes to younger members of the family.

Clearly the way we respond to color is a complicated business. You may think you are choosing a red shirt just because you like the color. But the truth is, you are probably responding to it based on what your brain, the environment, and your culture tell you about the color!

After Reading

A. Complete the sentences with one of these words:

vibrant tendency associate tranquility mourning represents

1. The dove _____ peace to many people.
2. She was in _____ after her friend died.
3. She has a _____ to talk too loudly when she's on her cell phone.
4. The colors in this painting are so _____ that it hurts my eyes.
5. I love the _____ of the park in the early morning.
6. After a while, the students learned to _____ Wednesday with exams.

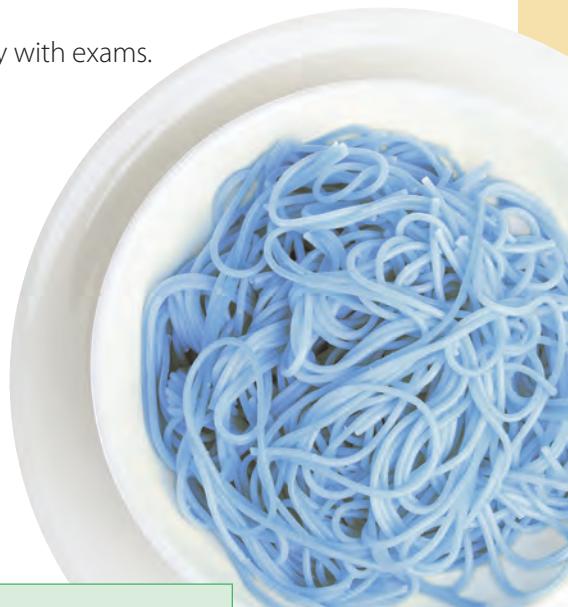
B. Answer the questions.

1. Where do the colors blue and red appear in nature?
2. How do most people respond to the colors red and blue?
3. What does the color white represent in most cultures?
4. Why must a bride not wear white in China?
5. What does the color red represent to the Chinese?
When do the Chinese wear red?

Discussion

Write the information in the chart below. Use the chart to discuss colors and their effect on people in groups of 3 - 4.

Discussing colors			
color	Where you can find it in nature	How you feel about the color	What this color represents in your country



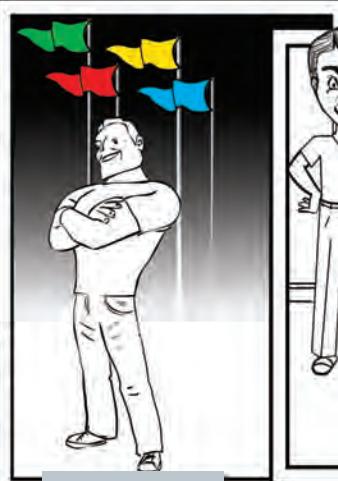
3 Language Plus

Aa

- A. Complete each sentence with an idiom shown.
Be sure to put each idiom in the correct tense.



see red



flying colors



catch (someone) red-handed



green thumb



roll out the red carpet

1. The thief was _____ with his hand still in the businessman's jacket pocket.
2. Look at my garden. No matter how hard I try, nothing grows. I guess I don't have a _____.
3. When I found out that my sister had taken my cell phone without my permission and then lost it, I _____.
4. When our grandparents came to visit, we took them to all the best restaurants in town. We really _____.
5. I passed the test in every subject with _____.
6. He has my dream job. I was _____ when he first told me about it.

4 Writing



Tools for Writing: Common Errors with Prepositions

Verbs that are followed by a certain preposition in English may be followed by a different preposition or no preposition at all in your language. In order to make sure your writing is grammatically correct, it is important to learn which verbs are used with which prepositions in English. Study the following verbs + prepositions.

look for

Can you help me **look for** my keys?
NOT: Can you help me ~~look~~ **look for** my keys?

ask for

We need to **ask for** some help.
NOT: ~~We need to ask~~ **ask for** help.

depend on

We may not go. It **depends on** the weather.
NOT: It ~~depends of~~ the weather.

smile at

My mother was so proud. She kept **smiling at** me.
NOT: She ~~kept smiling of~~ me.

remind of

She **reminds** me **of** my grandmother.
NOT: She ~~reminds me~~ my grandmother.

congratulate on

She **congratulated** him **on** the new job.
Not: She congratulated him ~~by~~ his new job.

3 Language Plus

- Focus students' attention on the cartoons and the idioms. Ask questions about each picture to elicit the meaning of the idiom.

see red

What is the man doing? (He's throwing litter into the man's yard.) **How does the man feel?** (He feels angry. He's *seeing red*.)

flying colors

What do you think man might be saying? (I'm so clever!) **Did he get good grades at the exams?** (yes)

green with envy

What are the parents giving their son? (a new car) **Who is the person with the green face?** (maybe his brother) **How does he feel?** (He's very jealous. He's *green with envy*.)

green thumb

Is the man a successful gardener? (yes)

Explain that when someone has green thumbs he is good at making plants grow.

catch someone red-handed

What is the little boy doing? (taking cookies from the cookie jar) **Who's watching him?** (his father) **Is he supposed to be doing this?** (No, he caught him in the act of doing it. He *caught him red-handed*.)

roll out the red carpet

Who is the man in the picture? (a celebrity) **What's the man doing?** (He's rolling out a red carpet. It's a sign of welcome for a famous or important person.)

- Have students work individually to complete the sentences. Check answers by calling on students to read the sentences.
- Ask students to use the idioms to talk about their own experiences or things they've seen. For example, ask:

Have you ever caught someone red-handed at something?

What white lies have you told?

Have you ever been green with envy?

What makes you see red?

Did anyone ever roll out the red carpet for you when you visited?

Do you know any families that have a black sheep?

Answers

- caught red-handed
- green thumb
- saw red
- rolled out the red carpet
- flying colors
- green with envy

4 Writing

Tools for Writing: Common Errors with Prepositions

- Explain to students that when learning a verb, it's a good idea to learn the prepositions that can go with it.
- Have students read the examples. Ask: **Are these the same as or different from the prepositions used with similar verbs in your language?**
- Write these sentences from the article, *The Psychology of Colors*, on the board. Have students complete them with the correct prepositions.

I like being surrounded ____ a color. (by)

White is worn ____ brides. (by)

Red is associated ____ danger. (with)

We respond ____ color. (to)

I feel passionately ____ poetry. (about)

Writing Prompt

- Read the Writing Prompt with the class. Explain that an expository essay explains or describes something.

Developing Your Writing

- Before students begin to write their essays, have them read the box *Developing Your Writing: Body Paragraphs That Support the Topic Sentence*. Then have them look at the sample essay, *Customs and Gestures in Korean Culture*. Point out that the first paragraph is the introduction. It states the topic of the essay.
- Ask a volunteer to read the topic sentence of the second paragraph. Ask: **What examples and information does the writer give to support the topic sentence?** (The writer explains the roles of bowing, smiling, and making eye contact in Korean introductions.)
- If time allows, have students find more examples of paragraphs that follow this model in the article *The Psychology of Color*.

Write Your Expository Essay

- Have students look at the chart or “web” on the page. Explain that this is a format often used for brainstorming ideas. The writer puts the topic in the center and then writes the subtopics in the circles around it. In the circle for each subtopic, there can be notes of possible examples and other supporting information.
- Have students decide on a topic and make their own web with subtopic ideas and notes about examples.
- Before students write their essay, have them show their web to a partner and explain how they are going to organize their essay. Then they listen to their partner’s explanation. They should question each other about anything that isn’t clear and make suggestions for examples and information their partners’ essay might include.
- Have students work individually to write a draft of their essay. Then they exchange drafts with their partner and comment on each other’s essays.

- Finally, students reread their essays and revise them. Tell them to check to make sure that they used grammar points from Units 4, 5, and 6. If not, have them try to include at least two or three different grammar points from the units as they revise the essay. They don’t have to use them all. Students might do this as homework. Write the grammar points from Units 4–6 on the board as a reference:

Direct objects

Indirect objects

To and For before indirect objects

Subjunctive

I’d like you + infinitive

I want you + infinitive

Gerunds after verbs

Infinitives after verbs

Teaching Tip

Having students discuss their ideas with other students and read and comment on each other’s essays makes the writing process less lonely and more interesting. Explain to students that talking about their essays helps them develop their ideas and find the words to use to explain them.

It isn’t only students who find writing difficult. Professional writers often suffer from something they call “writer’s block.” This means that they just can’t think of anything to write. Talking to others helps them break the writer’s block.

Workbook

Assign page 72 for additional writing practice at word and sentence level.

Writing Prompt

Write an expository essay about what different colors, symbols, customs, or gestures mean in your culture. Say what you think this shows about your culture. Include grammar points from Units 4, 5, and 6.

In an expository essay, the writer explains, describes, or gives information about a subject.

Write Your Expository Essay

1. Decide whether you will write about colors, symbols, customs, or gestures in your culture. What do you think these show about your culture? This will be your topic sentence.
2. Use a chart to organize your ideas. Write your topic sentence in the center circle. Then write ideas which support this topic sentence in the surrounding circles.
3. Write a draft of your expository essay.
4. Have a partner read and comment on your draft. Use your partner's comments and suggestions to revise your essay.

Developing Your Writing: Body Paragraphs that Support the Topic Sentence

The paragraphs of an essay between the introduction and conclusion are called the *body* of the essay. Each body paragraph must have one main idea, as well as examples, definitions, facts, or statistics which support that main idea. The main idea of each body paragraph must relate to and support the topic sentence in the introduction.

As you write the body of your essay, ask yourself:

- Does each paragraph have one main idea?
- Is this main idea supported by examples, definitions, facts, and/or statistics?
- Does each paragraph support the topic sentence in the introduction?



Customs and Gestures in Korean Culture

To understand the perspective of Korean people, it is important to understand their customs and gestures. I believe that Korean customs and gestures show that the Korean culture is quite traditional and conservative.

One aspect of Korean culture that is traditional and conservative is greeting people. Korean people usually bow when they meet one another. When Koreans are introduced to someone for the first time, they generally do not smile. Smiling is reserved for informal occasions. Koreans also consider staring impolite. We prefer to make only brief eye contact. When meeting a Korean person, I suggest you avoid looking into his/her eyes for more than a moment or two...

Vocabulary

1 Connected by Technology

VOCABULARY

Nouns

acronym
asthma
disbelief
double
hike

Verbs

inhibition
loner
mobility
paramedic
wonder

Adjectives

cyber
desperate
dispatch
determining
feature
network
perform
post

Adjectives to describe people

down to earth
laid back
spontaneous
straightforward

EXPRESSIONS

Proverbs

Better late than never.
Honesty is the best policy.
Laughter is the best medicine.
Nothing ventured, nothing gained.
Silence is golden.
The apple doesn't fall far from the tree.

Asking for clarification and confirming

Can you explain it?
Does that make sense?
How do you ...?
I get it.
What does that mean?

Real Talk

get it
got the hang of it
hang out
Hold on.
How on earth?

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

VOCABULARY

Nouns

blunder
burglar
coincidence
display
fraud
getaway car

inmate
misdemeanor
pavement
pickpocket
precaution
suspect

Verbs

abandon
assume
break into
charge
decline
hijack
install
insure
sentence

Adjectives

compact
grim
unauthorized

EXPRESSIONS

Ordering

At this point ...
Consequently ...
Once ...
To begin with ...

Real Talk

Are you kidding?
by accident
Come on.
easy mark

I'm positive.
let your guard down
nabbed

3 Far and Away

VOCABULARY

Nouns

bond
canopy
characteristic
conservation
deforestation
ecosystem
igloo
incentive
ranger
reduction
surface
toiletries
trekking
tweezers

Verb

encounter
preserve

Adjectives

breathhtaking
commercial
cozy
lush
remote
pristine
stunning
tasteful
undisturbed
widespread

Adverbs of degree

absolutely
almost
barely
completely
enough
extremely
hardly
just
moderately
nearly
quite
rather
relatively
scarcely
so
too
very

Sentence adverbs

actually
admittedly
apparently
certainly
clearly
evidently
frankly
honestly
naturally
obviously
officially
presumably
probably
undoubtedly
(un)fortunately

EXPRESSIONS

Making and declining special requests

Do you think it would be possible ...?
I wish it were possible, but ...
I wonder if it would be possible ...
I'm afraid (we) can't...
That won't be possible ...
The problem is ...
Unfortunately, that's not possible ...
We can't do it because ...

Real Talk

a drag
Awesome!
crummy
don't get it
red eye

EXPANSION Units 1–3

VOCABULARY

Nouns

armload
precaution
truckload
virus

Verbs

contract
download
infiltrate
manipulate
offload
overload
unleash
upload
urge

Adjective

fatal

Vocabulary

4 TV Around the World

VOCABULARY

Nouns

acclaim
affluence
appeal
contestant
documentary
episode
evolution
host
milestone

Verbs

obstacle
course
panel
patent
portion
prototype
treatment
version

Adjectives

adequate
culinary
cutting
distinct
disturbing
factual
feasible
fictional

forensic
illustrious
innovative
mysterious
pending
prosperous
puzzling

EXPRESSIONS

Expressing certainty

I'm sure/certain/positive that ...
I'm telling you that ...
It's obvious that ...
There's no question that ...

Real Talk

all
bugs
C'mon.
couch potato

get a kick out of
Nah
remote

Kinds of TV programs

crime drama
game show
morning show
motoring series
quiz show
sitcom
sports program

5 Working 9 to 5

VOCABULARY

Nouns

allergen
alternative
callus
fabric
flair

income
infection
satisfaction
status
trend

Verbs

analyze
appreciate
cooperate
cure
determine
embed
entail

Adjectives

alert
captive
identical
methodical
respectful
tremendous

Jobs

arborist
air traffic controller
engineer
race car driver
pediatrician
social worker
surgeon
telemarketer
zoologist

EXPRESSIONS

Asking for favors

Do me a favor and ...
Do you think you could ...?
I hate to ask, but ...
I'd really appreciate it if you would ...
What are the chances you could ...?
Would it be possible/too much trouble ...?

Real Talk

cover
help me out
in a bind
jump ship

keep it to yourself
No kidding?
take off
Will do.

6 Going Green

VOCABULARY

Nouns

bagful
consumption
efficiency
impact
landfill
perspective
pesticides
power outage

sacrifice
self-reliance
source
thermostat
utility
waste
wrapper
vacuum

Verbs

accumulate
access
conserve
rely
reschedule

Adjectives

bold
committed
enormous
glossy
harsh
organic
reusable

EXPRESSIONS

Making suggestions

Don't you think it would be a good idea + *infinitive*?
How about + *gerund*?
If you don't mind, I'd like to suggest + *gerund* ...
If you ... I think you'll find ...
You might want to consider + *gerund* ...

Real Talk

a hassle
a no-brainer
a piece of cake
chuck
I guess.
lame

EXPANSION Units 4–6

VOCABULARY

Nouns

funeral
inspiration
mourning
purity

spa
tendency
tranquility
vitality

Verbs

associate
represent
symbolize

Adjectives

calming
vibrant

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

catch (someone) red-handed
flying colors
green with envy
green thumb
roll out the red carpet
see red

Irregular Verbs

Base Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
break	broke	broken
buy	bought	bought
come	came	come
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sew	sewed	sewn
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

2 Anadolu Agency / Contributor, Dominic Byrne/Alamy, M4OS Photos/Alamy, **3** Grapheast/Getty, Images & Stories/Alamy; **4** Vibe Images/Alamy; **5** Art Directors & TRIP/Alamy; **6** TM © itanistock/Alamy, BL © itanisc4tock/Alamy; **7** TL © itanistock/Alamy; **9** TR ©aceshot1/SHUTTERSTOCK, BM Art Directors & TRIP/Alamy; **10** TR ©Patricia Hofmeester/SHUTTERSTOCK; **11** TR ©Purestock/Getty; **12** ML ©Branislav Senic/SHUTTERSTOCK, MR © Dimitri Vervitsiotis; **13** © Ozgur Donmaz, Win Initiative; **14** ©Tetra Images/Alamy, Hi Brow Arabia/Alamy; **18** Antonio M. Rosario, Jeffrey Coolidge, Jeffrey Coolidge, Antonio M. Rosario; **20** TR ©Alex Staroseltsev/SHUTTERSTOCK, BL ©Sascha Burkard/SHUTTERSTOCK; **21** TL ©AFP/Getty, ML ©Borko Cirim/SHUTTERSTOCK, MR ©PeJo/SHUTTERSTOCK; **22** BR ©kkgas/ISTOCK; **24** (boy with backpack) ©Andrey Shadrin/SHUTTERSTOCK, (hand removing wallet) © Fredrik Skold; **25** R © George Doyle; **26** TR ©Denis Vrublevski/SHUTTERSTOCK, MR ©Vasil Vasilev/SHUTTERSTOCK, BR ©Scott Richardson/SHUTTERSTOCK; **28** Richard Kolker; **32** Zigy Kaluzny, Comstock, James Lauritz, Laurence Monneret, JGI; **34** TR ©Carl & Ann Purcell/CORBIS, ML ©Stone/GETTY, BR ©Aria Amazon Towers; **35** TR ©Kakslauttanen Hotel; **37** T©Gamirasu Hotel, BL ©Elisa Locci/SHUTTERSTOCK, BR ©Elisa Locci/SHUTTERSTOCK; **38** TR ©Adams Picture Library t-a apl/Alamy; **39** TR ©IgorXIII/SHUTTERSTOCK; **40** TL ©Pattie Steib/SHUTTERSTOCK, BL ©urosrt/SHUTTERSTOCK; **41** TR ©Andre Nantel/SHUTTERSTOCK; **42** Philippe Bourseiller, Jeremy Woodhouse, DreamPictures; **46** Martin Stolworthy, Zoo Wire, Jeremy Woodhouse, John Lamb, Richard Merritt FRPS; **48** ML © Matilde Gattoni/Getty; **49** BR ©Image Source/Alamy; **50** TR ©Grapheast/Getty; **51** TR ©John T Takai/SHUTTERSTOCK; **54** (globe) © molotyorcoketail/ISTOCK, ML © Getty Images, MM ©Televisa, MR ©Jean-Marc Truchet/Getty, BL ©Paul Cowan/ISTOCK; **55** TL © Getty Images, TR ©veselin gajin/SHUTTERSTOCK, (globe) © molotyorcoketail/ISTOCK; **57** © arabianEye, © Tetra Images, Danita Delimont Creative/Alamy; **58** TR © Thierry Dosogne; **59** Celia Peterson/Getty, gulftimages/Alamy; **60** TR ©haider/SHUTTERSTOCK; **62** Pictorial Press Ltd/Alamy; **63** The Protected Art Archive/Alamy; **64** Tim E White/Getty; **66** Peter Dazeley; **68** arabianEye, Jason Hetherington, arabianEye, Image Source/Alamy, Adams Picture Library t-a apl/Alamy, Vetta; **69** (surgeon) ©Dmitriy Shironosov/SHUTTERSTOCK, (zoologist) Carsten Koall, (engineer) © Stockbyte,(nurse) ©David Sacks/Getty, (race car driver) ©Jacom Stephens/ISTOCK, (air traffic) © PhotoLink; **71** Digital Vision/GETTY, Image Source, Levent Ince, Ryan McVay, Caroline von Tuempling, Michael Blann, Marcelo Santos, arabianEye/Getty; **72** TR ©Hi Brow Arabia/Alamy; **73** TR ©RAGMA IMAGES/SHUTTERSTOCK; **74** TR ©Constance McGuire/ISTOCK, B ©Elena Schweitzer/SHUTTERSTOCK; **75** TR ©Andreas Lamm/ISTOCK; **76** Skip Nall; **80** Cohen/Ostrow, Jupiterimages, Flying Colours Ltd, Kaluzny-Thatcher, Bill Holden, Hi Brow Arabia/Alamy; **82** TR ©oorka/SHUTTERSTOCK; **83** TL ©GLUE STOCK/SHUTTERSTOCK, TR ©iDesign/SHUTTERSTOCK; **86** TR ©Peter Dazeley/Getty; **87** TR ©Quayside/SHUTTERSTOCK; **88** ML ©IKO/SHUTTERSTOCK; **89** TL ©dirkr/ISTOCK, MR ©Andreas Weber/ISTOCK; **90** Michael Neelon/Alamy, foodfolio/Alamy, D.Hurst/Alamy, Angescenes/Alamy, Helen Sessions/Alamy, **94** GeoTravel/Alamy, Peter Dazeley, david pearson /Alamy, Phil Degginger-Alamy, David R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc/Alamy; **96** TR © Tony Cordoza, BM ©Danny E Hooks/SHUTTERSTOCK; **97** BL ©Brian Palmer/ISTOCK, BR © arabianEye/Getty; **98** L ©Leigh Prather/SHUTTERSTOCK, R ©Vilnis Lauzums/SHUTTERSTOCK; **99** BR ©Joe Gough/SHUTTERSTOCK.

MEGAGOAL 3 Audio Track List

CD1

Track	Unit	Student Book Section
2	Intro	1 Listen and Discuss
3	Intro	3 Conversation
4	Intro	4 Listening
5	Unit 1	1 Listen and Discuss
6	Unit 1	4 Conversation
7	Unit 1	5 Listening
8	Unit 1	6 Pronunciation
9	Unit 1	8 Reading
10	Unit 1	10 Writing
11	Unit 2	1 Listen and Discuss
12	Unit 2	4 Conversation
13	Unit 2	5 Listening
14	Unit 2	6 Pronunciation
15	Unit 2	8 Reading
16	Unit 2	10 Writing
17	Unit 3	1 Listen and Discuss
18	Unit 3	4 Conversation
19	Unit 3	5 Listening
20	Unit 3	6 Pronunciation
21	Unit 3	8 Reading
22	Unit 3	10 Writing
23	EXPANSION Units 1–3	2 Reading

CD2

2	Unit 4	1 Listen and Discuss
3	Unit 4	4 Conversation
4	Unit 4	5 Listening
5	Unit 4	6 Pronunciation
6	Unit 4	8 Reading
7	Unit 4	10 Writing
8	Unit 5	1 Listen and Discuss
9	Unit 5	4 Conversation
10	Unit 5	5 Listening
11	Unit 5	6 Pronunciation
12	Unit 5	8 Reading
13	Unit 5	10 Writing
14	Unit 6	1 Listen and Discuss
15	Unit 6	4 Conversation
16	Unit 6	5 Listening
17	Unit 6	6 Pronunciation
18	Unit 6	8 Reading
19	Unit 6	10 Writing
20	EXPANSION Units 4–6	2 Reading

Key to Phonetic Symbols

Vowels		Consonants	
Symbol	Sample Word	Symbol	Sample Word
/i/	week	/b/	bike
/ɪ/	gift	/p/	pool
/ɛ/	bed	/g/	give
/æ/	bad	/k/	car
/ɑ/	father, box	/d/	day
/ə/	month, bus	/t/	ten
/ɔ/	small, door	/z/	zero
/ʊ/	room	/s/	son
/ʊ/	book	/ʃ/	shoe
/eɪ/	name	/tʃ/	just, garage
/aɪ/	line	/ʒ/	television
/ɔɪ/	boy	/tʃ/	check
/aʊ/	town	/v/	very
/oʊ/	old	/f/	fine
/ər/	first	/w/	wife
		/y/	yard
		/h/	here
		/ð/	this
		/θ/	thousand
		/m/	map
		/n/	now
		/ŋ/	ring
		/l/	left
		/r/	right

Photocopiable Activities 3 Answer Key

1 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. haven't
2. 's been or hasn't been
3. were
4. don't
5. 've
6. does
7. hadn't
8. Is / aren't
9. hasn't / is

Exercise 2

1. No, he hasn't.
2. Yes, I have.
3. Yes, I did.
4. No, they haven't.
5. Yes, he does.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary:

Exercise 4

1. Where are you? Or Who are you?
2. Laugh out loud
3. Possible
4. Before noon
5. Do you want to
6. Great
7. Be over

Exercise 5

	mail	on	friends	difference	photo	Idea	attention	trouble
extraordinary			✓	✓	✓	✓		
hang		✓						
make			✓	✓				✓
post	✓				✓			
unique			✓	✓	✓	✓		
medical						✓	✓	✓
bring	✓	✓	✓		✓		✓	✓
check	✓				✓	✓		

Sentences will vary.

2 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. has been reported
2. have been moved
3. were reported
4. had already flown
5. were damaged/ had been damaged
6. had been covered
7. reported
8. were stacked

Exercise 2

- 1 had been putting
2. turned up
3. had been helping
4. heard
5. had crashed
6. ran
7. had gathered
8. were trying
9. had hit
10. was leaving

Exercise 3

1. The getaway car was found in a junk yard.
Getaway Car Found in a Junk Yard
2. A family of three was located under the rubble.
Family of three located under rubble.
3. The painting was sold for \$ 2 million at the auction.
Painting sold at \$ 2 million at auction
4. The researcher was accused of fraud for the third time.
Researcher accused of fraud for third time.

Accept other options.

Exercise 4

1. pursued
2. hijacked
3. abandoned
4. unauthorized
5. declined
6. misdemeanor
7. inmates

Exercise 5

- 1.
2. kidding
3. suspect
4. easy mark
5. not on purpose
6. let your guard down
7. pickpocket
8. mugged

Photocopiable Activities 3 Answer Key

3 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. We could barely hear what he was saying.
2. the hotel was as good as we'd heard but it was extremely expensive.
3. I completely disagree with you.
4. Is the volume loud enough for you?
5. The laptop costs too much.
6. The car was completely wrecked.
7. You have barely eaten.
8. I've almost finished my essay.

Exercise 2

Naturally
Frankly
Certainly
Probably
Undoubtedly
Evidently
Admittedly

Exercise 3

	island	forest	awareness	incentive	shelter	change	situation	options
pristine	✓	✓						
remote	✓	✓			✓		✓	✓
lush		✓			✓			
explore	✓	✓		✓	✓			
environmental			✓			✓		
provide				✓	✓			✓
dramatic				✓			✓	
crummy								

Sentences will vary.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

4 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. Alex explained the situation to his family.
2. They moved the heavy objects for us.
3. We promised to call and send a postcard soon.
4. He gave me the DVD on condition that I return it in two days.
5. I thought he had given it to you as a present.
6. Janet baked a cake for her students.
7. They offered the job to Adrian.
8. She poured me a cup of tea and offered me some pastries.

Exercise 2

1. him
2. to him
3. him
4. him
5. him
6. him

Exercise 3

1. for
2. –
3. for
4. for
5. –
6. –
7. for
8. for

Exercise 4

- TV show:** host, audience, broadcast, microphone, episode, contestant, entertainment
Crime: suspect, forensic, arrest, plot, inmate, investigation, prison,
Environment: deforestation, ecotourism, preserve, exploration, solar power, preserve, cave
Sentences will vary

Exercise 5

1. evolution
2. award
3. transmit
4. prototype
5. acclaim
6. milestone
7. distinct
8. Viewers

Photocopiable Activities 3 Answer Key

5 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. It is imperative that the documents be submitted on time.
2. The examiner demanded that all the test booklets be collected.
3. They insisted that we join them.
4. I recommend that you walk for at least two hours a day
5. He requested that we be at the board meeting to express our views.
6. The headmaster suggests that older students be more supportive of younger children.
7. It is essential that our papers do not exceed the word limit.

Exercise 2

1. I'd like you to brush your teeth at least twice a day and avoid eating sweets, I'd like you to come back next week.
2. I want you to attend all classes and do your homework. I want you to work on your projects and spend more time in the lab.
3. I want you to be on time. I don't want you to be late for work. I want you to do your job carefully, wear a suit and be polite to customers.

Exercise 3

1. in a bind
2. help you out
3. keep it to yourself
4. No kidding
5. taking off
6. cover for
7. Will do

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

Sample answers

flavorist:

special training experience, methodical and patient, attention to detail

Flight attendant:

special training – experience, languages, social skills – polite, pleasant, patient

Air traffic controller: training and experience, languages, can take pressure, is fast and accurate

Teacher:

education, training, experience, - likes working with people

Games designer:

training, experience – likes gaming, is creative and has a sense of humour.

Doctor:

special training, experience, systematic, methodical

Exercise 5

Answers will vary.

Sample answers

1. TV producer, director

2. researcher, scientist

6 Photocopiable Activity

Exercise 1

1. to try out
2. repeating
3. wasting
4. applying
5. to update
6. to install
7. to work/working
8. to change
9. spending
10. to call

Exercise 2

- 1 Are you interested in protecting the environment?
2. Would you consider growing plants on the roof of your building
3. Do you consider going off the grid feasible?
4. Do you think people will begin developing a greater environmental awareness?
5. What would you suggest we do to motivate more people to change habits?
6. Do you know people who have tried to change but failed?
7. What might have helped them to continue trying?
8. What would you advise us to do to reduce waste?.

Exercise 3

1. I guess
2. rely on
3. harsh
4. committed
5. perspective
6. hassle
7. chuck
8. lame

Exercise 4

1. sacrifices
2. bold
3. source
4. tank
5. impact
6. consumption
7. conveniences
8. Conserving

Exercise 5

Answers will vary.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

1 Connected by Technology

Page 1

A

1. straightforward 4. spontaneous
2. loner 5. laid back
3. adventurous

B

1. a 3. b 5. c
2. f 4. d

Page 2

C

	simple present or past	present or past perfect	present or past progressive	present or past passive
1.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
6.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

D

1. g Has the internet been working?
2. a Do you ever use a fax machine?
3. e Were you texting me last night?
4. b Was the account closed?
5. f Are you sending an instant message?
6. c Have you changed your password?

Page 3

E

1. didn't 7. Have 13. are 19. haven't
2. was 8. Do 14. Do 20. don't
3. hadn't 9. do 15. do 21. didn't
4. did 10. do 16. Do
5. were 11. do 17. do
6. do 12. do 18. Did

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. Do you have a laptop?
2. Have you eaten dinner?
3. How does it work?
4. When was the telephone invented?
5. Had you called me before I arrived?
6. Is your cell phone working?
7. What were you doing last night?

Page 4

G

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- A:** How long have you had that laptop?
B: I've had it for a year.
A: What are you doing tonight?
B: I'm going to play computer games.. How about you?
C: We're going to play computer games too!
A: Do you like this rug?
B: Yes, I do!!

Page 5

H

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

Advantages of IM:

1. It's more like a real conversation.
2. It's more private than talking on the phone if you're in a room with others.

Disadvantages of IM:

1. Everybody knows when you're online.
2. It can be dangerous.

Ways to stay safe:

1. Don't give out your personal information.
2. Don't open pictures or files from someone you don't know.

Page 6

I

Answers will vary. Accept different types of abbreviations.

1. WRU?WU B ovr sn?
2. HzNGT meet us. Hz Bzy
3. Wz gvnULTInformtn?
4. OC, ILDI4U. UVhelpt meSMTmz.
5. √TStrOTCrnr. It's Chpr.

J

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. I would text message because the shop is busy and noisy.
2. I would text message because he might not hear the phone if there are trains going back and forth. But I would also call just in case.

3. I would text message because you're not supposed to make noise and disturb other people in the library.
4. I would call to apologize, because he/she is my cousin and a text message would not be suitable or it might show that I don't care enough.
5. I would call him because he is in his car driving and he probably won't check his text messages but he will hear the phone.

Page 7

K

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

Main objects: car, cell phone, steering wheel, dashboard, windshield

Main actions: driving OR just stopped to wait for something / checking phone for text messages OR just received a text message and is reading it.

1. A man is in his car. He has just stopped and is checking his cell phone for text messages.
2. He's reading a text message that he has just received and he is getting ready to reply to it.
3. He may send his reply and wait for an answer or he may drive away.

Page 8

L

Answers will vary

Page 9

M

Adjective	Comparative Adjective	Superlative Adjective
expensive	more/less expensive	the most/least expensive
difficult	more/less difficult	the most/least difficult
easy	easier	the easiest
successful	more/less successful	the most/least successful
useful	more/less useful	the most/least useful
relaxing	more/less relaxing	the most/least relaxing
wealthy	wealthier	the wealthiest
important	more/less important	the most/least important
risky	riskier	the riskiest
economical	more/less	the most/least
bad	worse	the worst
good	better	the best

N

1. The oldest, the most significant, heavier, more difficult
2. most successful, bigger, easier, the best
3. the wealthiest, richer, the most generous, poorest

O

Student's own answers

Page 10

P

1. our car serviced twice a year
2. to be checked
3. the new website designed
4. this program downloaded before I could play the game.
5. to be installed on this smartphone
6. to be disposed of carefully

Q

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. broken | 8. plugged |
| 2. get ... replaced | 9. unplugged |
| 3. damaged | 10. had ... cleaned |
| 4. have ... checked | 11. disconnected |
| 5. to be repaired | 12. to be fixed |
| 6. connected | 13. to be done |
| 7. had ... installed | 14. satisfied |

2 Crime Doesn't Pay

Page 11

A

Across

1. burglar
4. hijack
5. abandon
7. decline
9. misdemeanor
10. fled

Down

2. unauthorized
3. accuse
6. seize
8. inmate

Page 12

B

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 3. P | 5. A | 7. P | 9. A |
| 2. A | 4. P | 6. P | 8. P | 10. P |

C

1. A lot of money was taken from the cash register.
2. The burglar was caught on videotape.
3. The cashier was not hurt.
4. The burglar has been arrested by the police.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

5. The store has been reopened.
6. An alarm system will be installed by the store owner.

Page 13

D

1. The window was broken by Bob.
2. Thieves are caught by the police.
3. The door has been opened.
4. The car was stolen.
5. The child was kidnapped.
6. The airplane will be hijacked tomorrow.
7. The captain has been murdered.
8. The mystery will be solved by the police detectives.

E

1. Ana Maria had been sleeping when she heard a knock on the door.
2. Before it was stolen, I had had a nice bicycle.
3. Before he was arrested for stealing, everybody had liked him.
4. She was very sad because her cat had been lost..
5. He had been eating dinner when the police came to his door.

Page 14

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. Somebody had broken into the house before he got home.
2. Somebody had stolen her wallet when she was talking to her friend.
3. The birds had been eating her sandwiches when she went inside.

G

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1. had gone | 11. had decided |
| 2. had graduated / was graduating | 12. changed |
| 3. had decided | 13. got |
| 4. had checked | 14. had put |
| 5. was offering / had been offering / offered | 15. got out |
| 6. had asked | 16. had been showing |
| 7. put / had put | 17. realized |
| 8. left / had left | 18. did not have |
| 9. had told | 19. had stolen |
| 10. had been going | 20. asked |
| | 21. tried |
| | 22. had left |

Page 15

H

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

	Story 1	Story 2
What did the robber do wrong?	He made mistakes on his stick-up note.	He showed the cashier his driver's license.
What would be a good name for the story?	It Pays To Be Able To Read And Write	Old Enough But Not Smart Enough
Do you feel sorry for the criminal? Why?	No. He should not have tried to rob the bank.	No. He should not have tried to rob the store.

Page 16

I

6, 7, 8, 3, 1, 2, 5, 4, 9, 10

Answers will vary. Sample answer:

I would have left the house and called the police.

Page 17

J

Answers will vary. Sample answer:

People: Police

Things: crime scene tape, wall with graffiti

Actions: police are guarding the area, watching people, preventing people from crossing the line

1. The crime scene tape is securing the crime area.
2. Police officers are posted behind the crime scene tape to prevent unauthorized individuals from crossing the line.
3. The crime area is secured because the police are investigating the crime scene and they don't want it to be compromised.

Page 18

K

Answers will vary.

Page 19

L

1. were
2. were
3. played
4. studied
5. didn't go
6. went
7. got
8. emigrated
9. didn't like
10. involved
11. missed
12. didn't want
13. stayed
14. didn't find
15. decided
16. was
17. robbed
18. caught
19. started
20. wanted
21. traveled
22. saw
23. recognized
24. didn't arrest
25. met
26. opened

M

1. They used to play sports and study together.
2. No, he didn't because it involved a lot of routine work.
3. He became a thief because he couldn't find a job easily.
4. No, he didn't, because they were school friends.

N

Student's own answers

Page 20

O

1. were you sitting, heard
2. were watching, was breaking
3. lived, was always blocking
4. was running, was waiting
5. activated, entered
6. were wearing, came
7. knew, was acting
8. was serving, studied
9. stopped, was lying
10. was always taking, were

P

1. e; was working
2. a; was teaching
3. c; was living
4. b; were offering
5. d; was always raining

3 | Far and Away

Page 21

A

1. relatively
2. unique
3. alternative
4. ecosystem
5. surface
6. widespread
7. capsule
8. commercial
9. undisturbed

B

1. relatively
2. unique
3. alternative
4. cozy
5. widespread
6. surface
7. ecosystem
8. undisturbed
9. capsule

Page 22

C

1. You've barely eaten anything!
2. Is the light bright enough?
3. I scarcely know his name.
4. He goes to Asia very frequently.
5. The potatoes are not cooked quite perfectly.
6. I completely disagree.
7. That road is extremely dangerous.
8. They've almost finished planning their vacation.

D

1. enough
2. extremely
3. almost
4. too
5. rather
6. just

Page 23

E

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. It's so hot in here. Do you have a fan?
2. I'm very tired. I want to go to bed now.
3. I'm absolutely sure. I have no questions about it.
4. There isn't enough tea. I will make more.
5. There's barely anybody here. Only 3 people!
6. I am completely out of coffee. I don't have any more.

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. She is probably sleeping right now.
2. Admittedly, they didn't like the hotel.
3. We actually missed the beginning.
4. They have undoubtedly tried to call by now.
5. Evidently, Bob is avoiding me.
6. Naturally, you'll be staying with us.

Page 24

G

1. f
2. c
3. g
4. a
5. h
6. e
7. b
8. d

H

Answer will vary but should include adverbs of degree and sentence adverbs. Sample answer:

Youth hostels are undoubtedly the most popular places to stay for young people who are traveling.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

Probably the reason they are so popular is that in many cities they are clearly the cheapest option. Youth hostels allow travelers to stretch their budget and travel to more places. Admittedly, youth hostels are often not as luxurious as traditional hotels, but frankly, I don't think that most travelers mind. They are usually happy enough just to be visiting new places and seeing new things.

Page 25

I

1. They were built by hand, on raised platforms.
2. Rain collection and passive solar architecture OR low-flush toilets and pull-chain showers that save water.
3. Because they need to use stairs and walk along walkways.
4. Ecotourism costs more to sustain.

Page 26

J

Message 1: camping vacation

Clues: edge of a forest, beautiful beach, pitch tents, bungalows on the grounds.

Message 2: ecotourism

Clues: view/spectacular, wildlife/unbelievable, cut off, no cell phones, nature

Message 3: business trip (conference in luxury hotel)

Hotel/fabulous, five restaurants, spa, designer village, breathtaking view of the bay, conference, our group, meet them in the lobby

Answers will vary. Sample answer:

I think I would choose ecotourism because it sounds very attractive. It would be nice to be cut off for a while and not have to call people or answer emails.

Page 27

K

Answers will vary. Sample answer:

Nouns: reservoir, sand, evaporation, climate, desert, landscape, drought

Adjectives: hot, dry, barren, dried-up

Verbs: evaporate, dry up, die out

1. The temperature on earth keeps rising because of the depletion of the ozone layer and the increase of greenhouse gases.
2. Global warming causes extreme changes in climate and bring about drought.
3. In hot, dry areas, evaporation can result in a huge loss of water. The level of reservoirs in deserts can drop significantly in just one year, and eventually dry up completely.

Page 28

L

1. Answers will vary. Sample answer:

PROs of Ecotourism:

experiencing nature without causing damage, going back to basics/ living off the grid, raising environmental consciousness, promoting environmental awareness, fostering a symbiotic relationship between nature and people

CONs of Ecotourism:

If not organized and monitored it can cause damage
Large numbers of ecotourists can damage/environment
2. Answers will vary.

Page 29

M

1. are going to visit
2. are going to take
3. are going to get
4. is going to pick
5. are going to invite
6. are going to go
7. is going to stop
8. are going to cross
9. are going to say
10. am going to have

N

1. Where, They're going to go to London.
2. How long, They're going to stay there for two days.
3. How, They're going to take the Underground train.
4. Who, Adnan's uncle is going to meet them.
5. What, They're going to take a tour (of the city) on a double-decker bus.
6. Which, It's going to stop at Big Ben and Buckingham Palace.
7. When, They're going to take the plane home in the evening on their last day.

O

1. The city is famous for its historic buildings.
2. The climate is hot and humid in the summer.
3. Winter temperatures are much cooler.
4. Ankara is the capital city of Turkey.
5. The fertile plains are renowned for producing citrus fruits like lemons and oranges.

Page 30

P

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

1. What are you doing this weekend?
2. Are you going to drive home tonight?
3. Where will he go (on his) next vacation?
4. What are their friends doing tomorrow?
5. Who's she meeting at the airport in an hour?

Q

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. will go | 7. won't be |
| 2. will probably stay | 8. am going to watch |
| 3. am definitely going to go | 9. will probably stay |
| 4. will probably be | 10. am going to go |
| 5. are going to find | 11. will join |
| 6. am not going to spend | 12. will call |

EXPANSION Units 1-3

Page 31

A

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. g | 4. a | 7. f | 10. b |
| 2. e | 5. j | 8. l | 11. d |
| 3. i | 6. c | 9. k | 12. h |

B

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 3. d | 5. a | 7. b |
| 2. c | 4. a | 6. c | 8. a |

Page 32

C

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------|------------|
| 1. was | 4. Were | 7. doesn't |
| 2. didn't / was | 5. are | 8. am |
| 3. is | 6. has | 9. have |

D

1. A lot of information has been sent by email.
2. The Internet is going to be used in more and more remote areas.
3. A text message was sent to me today.
4. The Internet was invented in the 1960s.
5. Computers are purchased for schools by the government.
6. The mobile phone was invented in 1908 by Nathan Stubblefield.
7. The first cellular network was launched by the Japanese telephone company.

Page 33

E

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. was playing, saw | 5. had lived, moved |
| 2. had left, arrived | 6. had never been, turned |
| 3. waiting | 7. was, wrote |
| 4. arrested, was running | 8. was, had been running |

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. I had just left the house for 10 minutes.
2. The robber probably saw me leave.
3. Admittedly, I didn't even lock the door.

4. He must have been extremely fast.
5. When I got back home, all of my electronics were completely gone.
6. I was so upset.
7. Naturally, I called the police right away.
8. They were very nice.
9. Apparently, there have been a lot of robberies lately.
10. They actually think they will find him.
11. I obviously hope they do.

Page 34

G

Answer will vary. Sample answer:

I would like to participate in mountain climbing because there are easier and more difficult routes for everyone. I am not very fit but I like walking and hiking.

I don't think I would be interested in participating in rock climbing. It's a very demanding sport that requires fitness, practice and technique.

I would be very keen on cave exploration. I like the feel of caves with their special acoustics, cool water running, bats, stalagmites and stalactites.

Page 35

H

Answer will vary. Sample answer:

Nouns: conference room, laptop, business, businessmen, professionals, presentation, notes, skyscrapers, pointer, flip chart

Verbs: listening, looking, showing, presenting, thinking, considering, asking, commenting, agreeing, disagreeing, suggesting, modifying, making a deal

1. How long have you been in the conference room?
2. How long has the man been presenting his idea/plan?
3. Who are the people who are participating in the meeting?

Page 36

I

Answer will vary.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

4 TV Around the World

Page 37

A

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. broadcast | 5. talent |
| 2. contestants | 6. prosperous |
| 3. fictional | 7. award |
| 4. version | 8. plot |

B

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. fictional | 5. contestants |
| 2. broadcast | 6. version |
| 3. plot | 7. puzzling |
| 4. talent | 8. prosperous |

Page 38

C

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. D.O. = a secret | I.O. = me |
| 2. D.O. = the poem | I.O. = his wife |
| 3. D.O. = dinner | I.O. = us |
| 4. D.O. = a letter | I.O. = the producer |
| 5. D.O. = coffee | I.O. = me |
| 6. D.O. = the prize | I.O. = the best athlete |
| 7. D.O. = the show | I.O. = them |
| 8. D.O. = a present | I.O. = me |
| 9. D.O. = SR 100,00 | I.O. = the winner |
| 10. D.O. = the email | I.O. = me |

D

1. They bought a new DVD player for her.
2. Could you give the remote control to me?
3. Not possible
4. He lent a friend his car.
5. Matt gave his fans pictures.
6. Not possible
7. Not possible
8. The host gave a cup of coffee to the guest star.

Page 39

E

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. to | 3. to | 5. to | 7. for | 9. for |
| 2. to | 4. for | 6. for | 8. to | 10. to |

F

1. He sold it to me.
2. Maria opened the box for him.
3. My parents bought a computer for me.
4. Can you cash the check for me?

5. John turned on the TV for his dad.
6. They gave the part to him.
7. Will you tell me a story?
8. Andrew passed it to me.

Page 40

G

Answers will vary.

H

- | | | |
|----------|----------------------|--------|
| 1. bug | 3. get a kick out of | 5. all |
| 2. c'mon | 4. couch potato | 6. Nah |

Page 41

I

	Dave	Ahmed	Hameed
Does the person like game shows?	No	No	No
Why or why not?	The situations are boring and unrealistic. The contestants are whiney and annoying.	It is bad for contestants to make important life decisions on camera within a time frame.	It's a waste of time. Brings out the worst in people.
What does the person like to watch?	The news	Documentaries and films.	Mystery shows

Page 42

J

Answers will vary. Sample answer:

The ideal game show contestant likes speaking in public. He can work with people he has met recently and can control his feelings. He is keen to win but he is also a good loser who doesn't hold grudges. He can take criticism and follow instructions. He is competitive and likes being in front of a camera, a video or strong lights..

Page 43

K

- Nouns:** men, pens, office, desk, chair, window, view, beard
Verbs: sit, talk, discuss, smile, look at, try, say, communicate, discuss, decide, look alike
Place: office, work, company, KSA
Time: morning, noon

1. The two men must be brothers because they look alike.
2. They are sitting in their office or meeting room talking about things.
3. One of them is holding a pen and he is about to write or sign something

Page 44

L

Answers will vary.

Page 45

M

1. The, -, - ,the, the, the
2. The, -, the, the
3. The, -,the, the
4. -, -, the, the
5. -, the, -, the, -

N

1. a/the, -, the, the, a, -
2. -, -, -, the, -, the
3. -, a, the, -, the, -
4. -, -, a, the, the, the/-, the/-
5. A, a, an, an, a,an, a

Page 46

O

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. which/that | 4. who/that | 7. who/that |
| 2. which/that | 5. which/that | |
| 3. which/that | 6. who/that | |

P

1. which/that; subject
2. which/that/Ø; object
3. who/that; subject
4. which/that; subject
5. who/that/ Ø; object
6. which/that/ Ø; object
7. who/that; subject
8. who/that/ Ø; object

5

Working 9 to 5

Page 47

A

1. c
2. e
3. b
4. f
5. a
6. d

B

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. satisfaction | 5. entire |
| 2. income | 6. cooperate |
| 3. appreciated | 7. respectful |
| 4. entail | 8. status |

Page 48

C

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. take this medicine every day
2. to do your homework
3. stay out of the street
4. to stay still
5. vote for me
6. not play with matches
7. send this first-class mail
8. wear a seatbelt

D

1. I recommend that you bring your résumé.
2. It is important that you dress nicely.
3. It is imperative that you make eye contact.
4. It is essential that you shake the interviewer's hand.
5. It is important that you sit up straight.
6. I suggest that you use a confident voice.
7. It is essential that you answer all of the questions.
8. I recommend that you ask them questions, too.
9. I suggest that you write a thank-you note afterwards.

Page 49

E

1. I recommend that you put your educational background on it.
2. It is necessary to give your phone number.
3. I suggest that you give your email address, too.
4. It is essential that you list your work experience.
5. It is imperative that you be clear and concise.
6. I recommend that you talk about your skills.
7. It is important that you include a list of references at the end.
8. I want you to call me if you have any questions.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. It is important that they know how to sew.
2. It is necessary that they go to medical school.
3. It is essential that they like to cook.
4. I recommend that they like talking to people.
5. It is important that they are good at math.
6. It is important that they like working outside.
7. It is essential that they be good with children.
8. It is necessary that they be healthy and strong.

Page 50

G

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. a. It is important that you wear a seat belt.
b. I recommend that you lock your doors.
2. a. I want you to clean your teeth.
b. It is important that you don't eat sweets.
c. I'd like you to open your mouth.
d. I insist that you brush your teeth before you go to bed.
3. a. It is essential that you not get up during take-off and landing.
b. It is necessary to wear a seatbelt.
c. It is important that you not use a phone while we're in the air.
d. I recommend that you take a nap.

H

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 1. keep it to yourself | 5. Will do |
| 2. jumped ship | 6. cover |
| 3. take off | 7. No kidding |
| 4. in a bind | |

Page 51

I

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. false | 3. true | 5. true |
| 2. true | 4. false | 6. false |

Page 52

J

1. construction engineers
It is important that they are good at supervising building projects.
2. accountants
It is necessary that they keep records meticulously
3. medical doctors
We expect them to cure us.
4. architect
It is essential that they have an eye for style and design.
5. teachers
It is necessary that they take work home.

6. flight attendants

It is imperative that they be courteous and efficient.

7. TV presenters

They need to pay attention to the way they look.

8. consultants

It is important that they listen carefully.

9. photographers

It is necessary that they have an eye for detail and know what to do.

10. reporters

It is imperative that they check information before using it.

Page 53

K

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

First name Family name Address Contact details
work experience qualifications professional training
interests references previous employer/s

1. Have you ever worked in this kind of area before?
2. Where were you trained?
3. Why did you leave your last job?

Page 54

L

Answers will vary.

Page 55

M

1. wasn't it?
2. doesn't he?
3. are you?
4. didn't they?
5. isn't there?
6. will we?

N

Answers will vary. Possible answers.

1. Could I have an application form?
2. Could/Can I take a short break?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where the manager's office is?
4. Would you mind telling me your address, and phone number?
5. Would you be able to lend me your phone to send a text?

O

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 5. c |
| 2. c | 6. b |
| 3. c | 7. c |
| 4. a | 8. a |

Page 56

P

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. doesn't have to | 5. mustn't |
| 2. mustn't | 6. have to |
| 3. must / has to | 7. has to / must |
| 4. must | 8. mustn't |

Q

1. didn't have to / didn't need to
2. needed to / had to
3. didn't have to / didn't need to
4. needn't
5. had to / needed to
6. needn't
7. had to / needed to
8. needn't
9. didn't have to / didn't need to
10. needn't

6 Going Green

Page 57

A

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. tap water | 6. plastic |
| 2. crank up | 7. consumption |
| 3. pesticides | 8. source |
| 4. thermostat | 9. efficient |
| 5. conserve | 10. recycle |

B

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. Pesticides keep bugs and animals away. They can hurt the environment.
2. You can crank up the radio, the TV, the heat, and the air conditioning.
3. Bottles, silverware, and furniture are commonly made of plastic.
4. We recycle plastic and glass bottles, tin cans, and paper.
5. They want to save money on gas.

Page 58

C

I am writing because I have a concern about our community and our environment. I have been living in this town for three years now. I love living here because most people are interested in protecting the environment. However, I have noticed that when I go shopping, most people have been using the plastic bags that the store provides. I quit using those years ago because they

are damaging our planet. I can't stand seeing people who say they care about the environment using them. I recommend buying three or four canvas bags at the store and using them every time you go shopping. I advise keeping them in your car or near your front door so that you remember to take them when you go to the store. By making small changes, I think we can make a big difference to our world.

D

Can only be followed by a gerund	Can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive	Can only be followed by an infinitive
consider	can't stand	agree
finish	continue	decide
imagine	hate	offer
keep	love	plan
recommend	prefer	promise
suggest	start	want

Page 59

E

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. getting | 5. to conserve |
| 2. watering | 6. to have |
| 3. to get | 7. insulating |
| 4. separating | 8. to eat |

F

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. b. I recommend eating fruits and vegetables every day.
c. I hate eating old vegetables from the supermarket.
2. a. I attempt to recycle everything possible.
b. I recommend getting two recycle bins.
c. I like knowing that I'm helping the earth.
3. a. We started biking to work so that we don't pollute the environment.
b. We hate paying for parking in the city.
c. We even prefer to bike to work on rainy days.

Page 60

G

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. The farmer began using organic methods. / The farmer began to use organic methods.
2. We decided to get solar panels.
3. I prefer to eat organic food.
4. We expect to see her soon.
5. She quit smoking.

WORKBOOK 3 Answer Key

H

1. a hassle 3. chuck 5. I guess
2. a piece of cake 4. lame 6. a no-brainer

Page 61

I

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. a

Page 62

J

- Products are packaged in a particular way to protect them from damage, make packing and transport easier and present them in an attractive manner. For example, cereal like corn flakes comes in a colorful box with a vacuum sealed paper bag inside containing the cereal. Eggs come in special plastic or papier mâché case.
- Certain types of packaging are used to preserve food products. For example, canned milk and other food, vacuum wrapped cheese or meat, vacuum packaged nuts.
- Packaging is used to promote products.
- People who live off the grid avoid buying packaged goods to avoid polluting the environment and causing further environmental damage.
- There are plenty of products with multiple packaging such as frozen seafood in plastic wrapping in a cardboard box. Many people dispose of the packaging by throwing it away with the rest of the garbage. We try to throw all plastic, paper and glass objects into special recycling bins

K

Answers will vary depending on the reasons given. Sample answers:

Paper cartons can be recycled; however, they require wood for the paper so more trees are cut. So they are not environmentally friendly.

Plastic containers or bottles are harmful to the environment.

Glass bottles, or jars can be recycled or reused. If they are not recycled they can be harmful to the environment as they are often the cause of forest fires and fires in general especially in hot weather.

Cellophane bags or wrapping can be recycled, and are biodegradable so they are environmentally friendly.

Paper packaging can be recycled but more trees are cut in order to make paper that is used for wrapping, writing etc. So it is harmful.

Paper and plastic packaging is usually thrown away and is harmful to the environment.

Cloth bags and wrappers are environmentally friendly because they can be reused and do not cause any damage.

We can reuse paper/cardboard boxes to store things.

We can use cloth bags and wrappers to store things or carry them. Cellophane bags can be reused to pack or store things. Glass bottles and jars can be reused to store jam, spices, oil etc. but they can also be cut and turned into water glasses, candleholders or pencil holders.

Page 63

L

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

Things and People: boys, children, gloves, bins, containers, rubbish, garbage, trees, environment

Verbs: carry, collect, sort, put into, recycle, help

Adjectives: aware, friendly, happy, hardworking, active, conscious

- Children are conscious of what needs to be done to preserve the environment.
- They are proud to be active participants in "green" projects.
- They often participate in "clean the forest" or "clean the beach" campaigns enthusiastically.

Page 64

M

Answers will vary.

Page 65

N

- grow
- is changing
- goes
- work
- are considering
- does he know
- are melting
- doesn't have
- are currently researching
- Do you believe

O

- boils, is boiling
- studies, is studying
- are living, live
- is depleting, depletes
- doesn't look, aren't looking

Page 66

P

- heat, will melt
- replant, will take
- won't improve, don't stop
- install, will we cut
- don't water, won't grow
- will ask, don't obey
- teach, will treat
- will be, don't reduce

Q

Student's own answers

EXPANSION Units 4-6

Page 67

A

Across

2. hassle
3. in a bind
5. humiliating
7. puzzling
9. ditch
12. income
14. fictional
16. help me out
17. take off
18. version

Down

1. get a kick out of
4. a piece of cake
6. appreciate
8. organic
10. prosperous
11. pesticides
13. cooperate
15. chuck

Page 68

B

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| 1. for | 3. for | 5. to | 7. to |
| 2. to | 4. to | 6. for | |

C

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 1. helping | 5. going |
| 2. to start | 6. working |
| 3. to get | 7. to apply |
| 4. working / to work | 8. to bring |

D

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. hanging out with my friends
2. to pay a lot of money for clothes
3. to go to the store today
4. waiting in line
5. to vacation close to home
6. to get a job for the summer
7. going to a university that is far away
8. to do very well in this class

Page 69

E

1. He suggested that I buy a hybrid car.
2. I want you to buy a stainless steel water bottle.
3. It is essential that we all try to save water.
4. Environmentalists request that we eat locally grown food.
5. It is important that everyone try to conserve energy.
6. Environmentalists recommend that you turn off the lights when you're not in a room.
7. I'd like you to recycle all of that paper.
8. They asked that she reuse containers as much as possible.

F

1. I want you to become a lawyer.
2. He ordered it for me.
3. The carpenter built a new closet for us.
4. I decided to take a break.
5. It is important that you come on time.
6. Will you reserve a table for me?
7. Maria asked that Lisa bring a dessert.
8. My teacher suggested coming a little early tomorrow.
9. I love to eat/eating out at restaurants.
10. I demand that you tell me what you're talking about.

Page 70

G

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

1. To meet the demand for chocolate during the festive season.
2. Dark, light, white, bitter, semi-sweet, sweet, with wafers, caramel or fruit, in powder or syrup form, in different sizes and shapes.
3. The busiest time is the post-Ramadan period because of the numerous orders of chocolate arrangements that have to be filled.

1. c 2. f 3. a 4. d 5. e 6. b

Page 71

H

Answers will vary. Sample answers:

Feelings: happy, surprised, shocked, excited, delighted

Actions: exchange gifts, give, see, find, be faced with, get a gift

1. Children get really excited with celebrations.
2. Most people are delighted to have surprise gifts; but most of all they are really happy to see someone they like turn up unexpectedly.
3. The boy is delighted with the present that his parents got him to reward him for his good grades at school.

Page 72

I

Answers will vary.

1 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with the correct auxiliary verb. Use the correct affirmative or negative form of **do**, **have**, or **be**. More than one answer may be possible..

1. We haven't managed to move yet; but we will soon.
2. He _____ chatting with his Italian friend on Skype.
3. They _____ searching for information on the Internet when there was a power cut.
4. I _____ know how you manage to text so fast. It takes me ages.
5. Well, for one thing, I _____ been using abbreviations and acronyms for a long time, so I'm used to them.
6. What _____ DYWT mean?
7. I _____ realized abbreviations could make such a difference to speed.
8. _____ your cell phone working? Why _____ you answering?
9. He _____ checked his messages yet, but he _____ still online.

Exercise 2

Write yes/no answers.

1. He hasn't had his computer reformatted for a long time, has he?
💡 No, he hasn't.
2. Have you used up all your cell phone time?
Yes, _____.
3. Did you really spend all that time on the Internet?
Yes, _____.
4. Have they been sending messages to everyone on a weekly basis?
No, _____.
5. Does he really think he can get away with such bad work?
Yes, _____.

Exercise 3

Answer the questions.

1. How long do you spend surfing the Internet, every day?

2. What do you use your computer for?

3. Do you communicate with your friends online?

4. Do you prefer to meet face-to-face or online? Why? Why not?

5. What are your favorite sites?

1 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 4

What do these acronyms stand for?

1. WU? _____
2. LOL _____
3. POS _____
4. B4N _____
5. DYWT _____
6. Gr8 _____
7. B ovr _____

Write your own acronyms. Exchange and read them. Do they work?

Exercise 5

Match the words to form collocations. Tick the items that can be combined.

	mail	on	friends	difference	photo	idea	attention	trouble
extraordinary			✓	✓	✓	✓		
hang								
make								
post								
unique								
medical								
bring								
check								

Choose some of the items and write sentences. Look for examples in Unit 1.

💡 What an extraordinary photo! This is such a breathtakingly beautiful place.

2 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks in this news excerpt with the correct passive forms.

💡 Serious damage (1) (report) has been reported in the flooded areas. Most of the families in the wider area (2) (move) _____ by rescue helicopters and vehicles to shelters and empty army barracks 30 miles away. About 23 people (3) (report) _____ missing.
Mr. Ethan Swanson of Little Creek has had to leave his farm and all his surviving livestock behind in order to join his family who (4) (already/fly) _____ to safety. All the crops (5) (damage) _____. Lower buildings (6) (cover) _____ by great quantities of mud when Mr. Swanson (7) (report) _____ to the rescuers. He insists that a neighboring farm, higher up the hill, is still above water level but flooding fast. He says that bags of sand (8) (stack) _____ around the main buildings when the helicopter flew past their farm.

Exercise 2

Circle the correct form.

💡 Fahd told me that his father (1) **(had been putting / had put)** the luggage in the car when his uncle (2) **(had turned up / turned up)**, and didn't see him at first. Fahd himself (3) **(helped / had been helping)** with the rest of the things that had to be carried out when he (4) **(heard / had heard)** his uncle calling for help. Apparently, someone (5) **(has crashed / had crashed)** into him as he was turning into our street. They (6) **(ran / were running)** to where the cars were. A crowd (7) **(gathered / had gathered)** and some people (8) **(were trying / are trying)** to help the driver who (9) **(had hit / was hitting)** his head on the dashboard and was feeling faint. Fortunately, the ambulance arrived shortly and the driver was carried out of the car and taken to hospital. He apologized to my uncle as he (10) **(was leaving / had been leaving)** and said it had all been his fault. I was really surprised!

Exercise 3

Use the sentences to write newspaper headlines in two stages.

1. The police found the getaway car in a junk yard.
💡 stage 1: The getaway car was found in a junk yard.
stage 2: Getaway Car Found in Junk Yard
2. The rescuers located a family of three under the rubble.

3. They sold the painting for \$2 million at the auction.

4. The police accused the researcher of fraud for the third time.

2 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 4

Fill in the blanks with the correct words or phrases. Make changes to the form if necessary.

decline unauthorized abandon inmate misdemeanor hijack pursue

1. The suspect was (1) pursued by a helicopter and two patrol cars.
2. Two inmates escaped from jail and (2) _____ a van that was owned by a local farmer.
3. The van was later (3) _____ near an old factory, where the police located it.
4. The police questioned a suspect for (4) _____ use of a credit card.
5. The man accused of masterminding the robbery was offered a deal on condition that he disclose the whereabouts of his partners, but he (5) _____.
6. A (6) _____ is not really a crime but can be quite troublesome for others, such as disturbing the peace by making too much noise late at night.
7. The (7)_____ of a county prison were planning to escape through a hidden door in the laundry room when they were found out.

Exercise 5

Match words and phrases with the definitions.

Definitions	Words and phrases
1. Be serious!	_____ kidding
2. making a joke	_____ easy mark
3. one who might have committed a crime	_____ pickpocket
4. likely victim	_____ let your guard down
5. by accident	_____ mugged
6. stop being careful	_____ suspect
7. person who steals things from bags/pockets	_____ not on purpose
8. being stopped and robbed in the street	_____ come on

Choose some of the words or phrases and write sentences.

1 I took my sister's bag to school by accident.

3 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Rewrite the sentences using the appropriate adverb of degree.

absolutely too extremely barely almost enough hardly completely

1. It was very difficult to hear what he was saying.
💡 We could barely hear what he was saying.
2. The hotel was as good as we'd heard, but it couldn't have been more expensive.

3. I don't agree with you at all.

4. Is the volume as high as you need it to be?

5. This laptop case costs more than all the others for no good reason.

6. The car was so badly wrecked it could not be repaired.

7. You haven't eaten much. Don't you like this dish?

8. I've only got a sentence left to finish my essay.

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct sentence adverb. More than one answer may be possible.

evidently naturally frankly certainly probably admittedly actually undoubtedly

Frank and Samir are discussing work after a business meeting.

- 💡 **Frank:** So, what do you think? Naturally, we'll have to work on our proposal more, but I think we started rather well.
- Samir:** _____, I can't say for sure. I don't trust them all that much. They are _____ interested but beyond that...who knows?
- Frank:** They are _____ having a similar conversation about us.
- Samir:** Yes, you're right. I hadn't thought of that.
- Frank:** They were _____ impressed by our initial proposal. Don't you think?
- Samir:** _____, it is the best they are likely to get from anyone. We did a very good job.
- Frank:** _____, I think it's the best we've done to date.

3 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 3

Match the words to form collocations. Tick the items that can be combined.

	island	forest	awareness	incentive	shelter	change	situation	options
pristine		✓						
remote								
lush								
explore								
environmental								
provide								
dramatic								
crummy								

Choose some of the items and write sentences.

 If I found myself in that situation, I would probably want to explore my options.

Exercise 4

Answer the questions.

1. What are some of the benefits of ecotourism?

2. Would you be interested in becoming an ecotourist? Why? Why not?

3. Do you find the prospect of sleeping in the wilderness appealing? Why? Why not?

4. What kind of area would you feel safer in? Why?

5. Why kind of area would you feel unsafe in? Why?

6. What is your view of conservationists? Do you think they have certain characteristics that distinguish them from other people?

7. If you had the opportunity to decide on two things to conserve and were given the funds to do so, what would you spend those funds on? Why?

4 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Rearrange the words and write sentences.

1. explained / Alex / his family / the situation / to

Alex explained the situation to his family.

2. for / the / they / objects / moved / heavy / us

3. postcard / send / call / promised / soon / them / a / we / and / to

4. return / he / gave / in / me / the / on condition / I / it / two days / DVD / that

5. thought / I / he / given / it / to / as / you / had / a present

6. her / baked / students / a cake / for / Janet

7. job / Andan / they / to / the / offered

8. pastries / of tea / she / me / a cup / and / me / some / offered / poured

Exercise 2

Adel is very happy. His parents bought (1) **him / for him** a car for his graduation. They gave it (2) **to him / him it** the day he received his degree. They had all gone to the graduation ceremony and when it was over, his father offered (3) **to him / him** a set of keys.

Adel could not believe it at first. He thought he was dreaming. He hadn't expected his parents to give (4) **him / to him** such an expensive gift. They had sent (5) **him / for him** to the best schools and paid for him to study what he wanted at university. They had also promised to send (6) **him / to him** abroad for his postgraduate studies. They had done so much for him.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with **for** if necessary.

1. Will you keep some food for me please?

2. I got ____ her a new bag.

3. They bought a new car ____ their son.

4. Her parents reserved a seat ____ her.

5. Mike ordered ____ his friends some pizzas.

6. They wrote ____ me a letter from Spain.

7. Could you please cash this check ____ me?

8. We prepared all the ingredients and waited ____ the chefs to arrive.

4 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 4

Write the words in the appropriate column of the chart. Compare with a partner. Then use words from the columns to write sentences. Try to use more than one word in each sentence.

suspect host forensic deforestation audience ecotourism broadcast arrest
microphone plot preserve inmate exploration solar power investigation
episode contestant prison preserve cave entertainment

TV show	crime	environment

💡 The suspect was arrested for plotting to rob the bank.

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks with words from the list.

evolution distinct prototype transmit milestone award acclaim viewers

1. The evolution of television from a mechanical to an electronic device took place over decades.
2. _____ winning television shows attract a lot of commercial advertising and secure a significant income for their producers.
3. Channels _____ programs that are expected to become popular among viewers.
4. Inventors of devices and instruments need to produce a _____ of their invention before they can patent it.
5. Successful programs receive _____ as well as negative criticism.
6. The transmission of images over a distance was a _____ in the history of television.
7. Liquid crystal (LCD) and plasma are _____ types of television monitors.
8. _____ are often invited to call into talk shows and express their opinion.

5 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Rewrite the sentences using the subjunctive.

1. The documents must be submitted on time.

💡 It is imperative that the documents be submitted on time.

2. The examiner wants all the test booklets to be collected.

The examiner demanded _____

3. They want us to join them and their guests for dinner tomorrow evening.

They insisted _____

4. You should walk for at least two hours a day.

I recommend _____

5. He asked us to be at the board meeting tomorrow to express our views.

He requested _____

6. The headmaster thinks that it would be a good idea for older students to be

supportive of younger children.

The headmaster suggests _____

7. We shouldn't exceed the word limit or our papers will not be accepted.

It is essential _____

Exercise 2

Read the situations and write sentences using the subjunctive or ***I'd like you to / I want you to***.

1. Saeed is at the dentist. He has just had his teeth checked. The dentist knows that Saeed does not always take care of his teeth. What does he say to him? (brush your teeth at least twice a day, avoid sugar, come back next week)

2. Aisha is listening to her teacher. She will have to take her final test in science soon and her teacher is worried because she has been missing classes and she has not been working the way she should. What does she say to her? (not miss classes, do your homework, work on projects, spend some time in the lab)

3. Halil was late for work this morning. His boss is talking to him about it and other things he wants him to do at work. What does he say to him? (not be late for work, do your job carefully, wear a suit, be polite to customers)

5 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words or phrases.

help you out no kidding keep it to yourself cover for will do taking off in a bind

Susan: I'm (1)_____ I don't know what to do.

Maida: Can I (2)_____?

Susan: Yes, you can, actually. But can you (3)_____ I don't want anyone else to know.

Maida: Yes, of course. What's the matter?

Susan: Oh, nothing really. It's just that I have to fly to Dubai with my father.

Maida: (4)_____?

Susan: No, not at all. We're (5)_____ for a two week vacation.

Maida: That's great! Have a great vacation.

Susan: Thanks but it's not that simple. You see I had promised to (6)_____ Judy, our friend, at the library for a day but I'll be away.

Maida: ...and you want me to do it. I'll check my schedule and let you know.

Susan: Please, Maida. I'll owe you big time.

Maida: (7)_____! I'll do it Susan. What are friends for, after all.

Exercise 4

Note down the qualifications/training and personal characteristics that would make someone an ideal candidate for some of these jobs. Compare with a partner.

Job	qualifications/training	personal characteristics
flavorist	special training - experience	
flight attendant		
air traffic controller		
teacher		
games designer		
doctor		

Choose one of the jobs above and write a brief profile about it in your notebook.

Exercise 5

Read the texts below and suggest jobs for these people. You may suggest more than one type of job.

"I am very creative but I get bored easily. I like design but I don't enjoy painting. I think television is the best thing that was ever invented. I watch a lot of shows and films and often make notes about ideas that I have as I watch them. I notice things like lighting and sets and how people are dressed or positioned."

1. _____

"I am extremely tidy and methodical. I can't stand a mess. I don't know how some people manage to work at a desk that's piled with papers and books and all sorts of stuff. I am keen on chemistry and physics. I am also good at math. Subjects concerning language and literature are not my favorite. I like working on my own."

2. _____

6 Photocopiable Activities

Grammar and Vocabulary Review



Exercise 1

Use the correct verb form. Sometimes both the gerund and the infinitive are possible.

- 💡 1. Our supervisor advised us (1) (try out) to try out a different experiment.
2. They keep (2) (repeat) _____ the same things over and over.
3. I hate (3) (waste) _____ resources for no reason.
4. I would consider (4) (apply) _____ for the job if it didn't involve travel.
5. He attempted (5) (update) _____ his files but the program was incompatible.
6. She needs us (6) (install) _____ the equipment and try it out.
7. I prefer (7) (work) _____ early in the morning.
8. You wouldn't expect him (8) (change) _____ habits, would you?
9. I would recommend (9) (spend) _____ less time on football practice and more time on fitness exercises.
10. Sabah often forgets (10) (call) _____ and let us know when she is not able to attend the lesson.

Exercise 2

Use the prompts to write questions. Then ask your partner or answer the questions for yourself.

1. you / be /interested / in / protect / the environment?
💡 Are you interested in protecting the environment?
2. would / you / consider / grow / plants / on the roof of your building?

3. you / consider / go off the grid / feasible?

4. you / think / people / will begin / develop / a greater environmental awareness?

5. what / would / you / suggest / do / to motivate more people to change habits?

6. you / know / people / who have tried / change / but failed?

7. what / might have helped them / to continue / try?

8. what / would you / advise / do / to reduce waste?

6 Photocopiable Activities

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word or phrase.

I guess lame hassle rely on committed harsh chuck perspective

Omar: How are you getting on with your assignment?

 **Adel:** OK, (1) I guess. I'm not too happy with some parts.

Omar: Would you like me to help in any way?

Adel: Thanks but no. I should learn to (2) _____ myself. I can't expect someone else to bail me out every time.

Omar: Don't be so (3) _____ on yourself. You are a (4) _____ learner. You always try to do your best in all subjects.

Adel: Thanks. Maybe I've got to change my (5) _____. I always feel that people expect me to do better than I have.

Omar: Absolutely, if that's the way you see things, it's time to change. It seems to me that you are the one that is creating all the (6) _____. You always have something to say and you're well informed on so many topics.

Adel: Oh, come on. You're just saying that to make me feel better.

Omar: You know me better than that. OK, (7) _____ what you've done so far and start from scratch.

Adel: That would be a (8) _____ thing to do. I've already done my research and written more than five pages of it.

Exercise 4

Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. Living off the grid entails **series / sacrifices**.
2. Deciding to give up public utilities is a **blood / bold** choice to make.
3. A lot of people set up a renewable **source / sauce** of energy.
4. A cistern is a type of **well / tank** that is used to collect rainwater.
5. Children should be aware of the **impact / impression** they have on the environment.
6. People who live off the grid avoid the **consumption / assumption** of packaged food.
7. Life on the grid offers **conveniences / conservation** that have a negative impact on the environment.
8. **Conserving / Reserving** energy is a necessary requirement for environmental protection.

Exercise 5

Make a list of things you should and shouldn't do to preserve the environment. Compare your ideas with a partner.

Dos	Don'ts

